

FORD **FIESTA VIGNALE** Owner's Manual



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2020

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3657en 202001 20200305103026

Table of Contents

Introduction

Acknowledgments	9
About This Manual	9
Symbols Glossary	9
REACH	11
Replacement Parts Recommendation	12
Mobile Communications Equipment	12

Data Privacy

Data Privacy	14
Service Data	15
Event Data	15
Settings Data	16
Connected Vehicle Data - Vehicles With: Modem	16
Mobile Device Data - Vehicles With: SYNC 3	16
Emergency Call System Data	17

Environment

Protecting the Environment	18
----------------------------------	----

Visual Search

Steering Wheel	19
Instrument Panel - LHD	20

Instrument Panel - RHD	22
Center Console - Liquefied Petroleum Gas (LPG), Vehicles Without: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid	24
Center Console - Liquefied Petroleum Gas (LPG), Vehicles With: Active Park Assist/ Front Parking Aid/Rear Parking Aid	24
Center Console - Manual Transmission, LHD, Vehicles Without: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear Parking Aid, Excluding: Liquefied Petroleum Gas (LPG)/ST	25
Center Console - Manual Transmission, LHD, Vehicles With: Active Park Assist/ Front Parking Aid/Rear Parking Aid, Excluding: Liquefied Petroleum Gas (LPG)/ST	25
Center Console - Manual Transmission, RHD, Vehicles Without: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear Parking Aid, Excluding: Liquefied Petroleum Gas (LPG)/ST	26
Center Console - Manual Transmission, RHD, Vehicles With: Active Park Assist/ Front Parking Aid/Rear Parking Aid, Excluding: Liquefied Petroleum Gas (LPG)/ST	27
Center Console - 6-Speed Automatic Transmission, LHD, Vehicles Without: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/ Rear Parking Aid, Excluding: Liquefied Petroleum Gas (LPG)/ST	27

Center Console - 6-Speed Automatic Transmission, LHD, Vehicles With: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear Parking Aid, Excluding: Liquefied Petroleum Gas (LPG)/ST	28
Center Console - 6-Speed Automatic Transmission, RHD, Vehicles Without: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/ Rear Parking Aid, Excluding: Liquefied Petroleum Gas (LPG)/ST	29
Center Console - 6-Speed Automatic Transmission, RHD, Vehicles With: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear Parking Aid, Excluding: Liquefied Petroleum Gas (LPG)/ST	29
Center Console - 7-Speed Automatic Transmission, LHD, Vehicles Without: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/ Rear Parking Aid, Excluding: Liquefied Petroleum Gas (LPG)/ST	30
Center Console - 7-Speed Automatic Transmission, LHD, Vehicles With: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear Parking Aid, Excluding: Liquefied Petroleum Gas (LPG)/ST	31
Center Console - 7-Speed Automatic Transmission, RHD, Vehicles Without: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/ Rear Parking Aid, Excluding: Liquefied Petroleum Gas (LPG)/ST	31

Table of Contents

Center Console - 7-Speed Automatic Transmission, RHD, Vehicles With: Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear Parking Aid, Excluding: Liquefied Petroleum Gas (LPG)/ST	32
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----

Child Safety

Installing Child Restraints	33
Child Restraint Positioning	37
Child Safety Locks	42

Seatbelts

Fastening the Seatbelts	43
Seatbelt Reminder	44

Supplementary Restraints System

Principle of Operation	46
Driver Airbag	46
Passenger Airbag	47
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off	47
Side Airbags	48
Side Curtain Airbags	49

Automatic Crash Notification System

Emergency Assistance	50
----------------------------	----

Keys and Remote Controls

General Information on Radio Frequencies	53
Remote Control - Vehicles With: Keyless Entry	53
Remote Control - Vehicles With: Remote Flip Key	56
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control	58
Passive Key Backup Position	58

MyKey™

Principle of Operation	59
MyKey Settings - Excluding: ST	59
Creating a MyKey - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start	60
Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: Push Button Start	61
Programming a MyKey	62
Clearing All MyKeys	63
Checking MyKey System Status	64
MyKey – Troubleshooting - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start	65

MyKey – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: Push Button Start	65
------------------------------------------------------------------	----

Doors and Locks

Locking and Unlocking	67
Keyless Entry	70

Liftgate

Manual Liftgate	73
-----------------------	----

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System	74
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery	74
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Perimeter Alarm	75

Door Edge Protection

Principle of Operation	77
------------------------------	----

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel	78
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start	78
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Push Button Start	78
Heated Steering Wheel	79

Table of Contents

Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wipers	80
Autowipers	81
Windshield Washers	83
Rear Window Wiper and Washers	84

Lighting

General Information	86
Lighting Control	86
Autolamps	89
Instrument Lighting Dimmer	89
Headlamp Exit Delay	89
Automatic High Beam Control	90
Front Fog Lamps	92
Rear Fog Lamps	92
Headlamp Leveling	92
Cornering Lamps	93
Direction Indicators	94
Interior Lamps - Vehicles With: Front Interior Lamp	94
Interior Lamps - Vehicles With: Front Interior Lamp With Map Reading Lamps	95

Windows

Opening and Closing the Windows	97
---------------------------------------	----

Global Opening and Closing	97
Window Bounce-Back	98
Locking the Rear Window Controls	99

Interior Mirror

Adjusting the Interior Mirror	100
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror	100

Exterior Mirrors

Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors	101
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Manual Fold Exterior Mirrors	101
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Power Fold Exterior Mirrors	101

Moonroof

Opening and Closing the Sun Shade	102
Opening and Closing the Moonroof	102
Venting the Moonroof	102
Moonroof Bounce-Back	102

Instrument Cluster

Gauges - Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	103
Gauges - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	105
Warning Lamps and Indicators	108

Audible Warnings and Indicators	111
---------------------------------------	-----

Information Displays

General Information	113
Trip Computer	114
Personalized Settings	116
Information Messages	118

Climate Control

Air Vents	134
Manual Climate Control	134
Automatic Climate Control	135
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control	138
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control	139
Heated Windshield	139
Heated Rear Window - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control	140
Heated Rear Window - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control	140
Heated Exterior Mirrors	140
Remote Start	140

Table of Contents

Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position	142
Head Restraints	142
Manual Seats - 3-Door	143
Manual Seats - 5-Door	146
Rear Seats	147
Heated Seats	148

Auxiliary Power Points

Auxiliary Power Points	149
Cigar Lighter	149

Wireless Accessory Charger

Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger	150
Charging a Wireless Device	150
Wireless Accessory Charger Indicators	151

Storage Compartments

Cup Holders	152
Device Holder	152

Starting and Stopping the Engine

General Information	153
---------------------------	-----

Ignition Switch	153
Push Button Ignition Switch	154
Starting a Gasoline Engine - Automatic Transmission	157
Starting a Gasoline Engine - Manual Transmission	160
Starting a Diesel Engine	164
Switching Off the Engine	166
Engine Block Heater	166

Unique Driving Characteristics

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission, Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	168
Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission, Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	170
Hybrid Vehicle Operation	171

Auto-Start-Stop - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

What Is Auto-Start-Stop	172
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions	172
Auto-Start-Stop Settings	172
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off	172
Stopping the Engine	172

Restarting the Engine	173
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators	173
Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning	173
Auto-Start-Stop - Troubleshooting	174

Fuel and Refueling

Safety Precautions	176
Fuel Quality - Gasoline	176
Fuel Quality - Diesel	177
Fuel Filler Funnel Location	177
Running Out of Fuel	177
Refueling	179
Fuel Consumption	181

Engine Emission Control

Catalytic Converter	183
Gasoline Particulate Filter	184
Diesel Particulate Filter	185

Manual Transmission

Manual Transmission Precautions	189
Shifting Into Reverse - 5-Speed Manual Transmission	189
Shifting Into Reverse - 6-Speed Manual Transmission	189
Manual Transmission Shift Indicators	189

Table of Contents

Checking the Clutch Fluid Level	189
Clutch Fluid Specification	189
Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting	190

Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission Precautions	191
Automatic Transmission Positions	191
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators - 7-Speed Automatic Transmission, Vehicles Without: Paddle Shifters	191
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators - 7-Speed Automatic Transmission, Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters	192
Automatic Transmission Shift Indicators - Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters	192
Manually Shifting Gears	192
Brake Shift Interlock	192
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings	194
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting	194

Brakes

General Information	195
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes	195
Parking Brake - Manual Transmission	195

Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission	196
Hill Start Assist	196

Traction Control

Principle of Operation	198
Using Traction Control	198

Stability Control

Principle of Operation	199
Using Stability Control - Excluding: ST	199

Parking Aids

Principle of Operation	200
Rear Parking Aid	200
Front Parking Aid	202
Side Sensing System	204
Active Park Assist	206
Rear View Camera	209

Cruise Control

Principle of Operation	212
Using Cruise Control	212
Using Adaptive Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	213

Using Adaptive Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go	224
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

Driving Aids

Speed Limiter	235
Intelligent Speed Limiter	235
Driver Alert	238
Lane Keeping System	240
Blind Spot Information System	244
Cross Traffic Alert	246
Traffic Sign Recognition	250
Speed Sign Recognition	252
Eco	254
Pre-Collision Assist	254
Drive Control	260

Efficient Drive Mode

What Is Efficient Drive Mode	261
Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and Off	261
Displaying the Efficient Drive Mode	261
Trip Summary	261
Efficient Drive Mode Indicators	261

Current Highway Information

What Is Current Highway Information	262
-------------------------------------------	-----

Table of Contents

Enabling Current Highway Information	262
Checking Current Highway Information Status	262

Load Carrying

General Information	263
Rear Under Floor Storage	263
Luggage Covers	264
Roof Racks and Load Carriers - Vehicles Without: Panoramic Roof Opening Panel	264
Roof Racks and Load Carriers - Vehicles With: Panoramic Roof Opening Panel	264

Towing

Towing a Trailer - Excluding: ST	266
Towing a Trailer - ST	267
Tow Ball	267
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Manual Transmission	270
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Automatic Transmission	271

Driving Hints

Economical Driving	273
Cold Weather Precautions	273

Breaking-In	273
Driving Through Water	273
Engine Overspeed	274
Floor Mats	274

Roadside Emergencies

Hazard Flashers	276
First Aid Kit	276
Warning Triangle	276
Fuel Shutoff	276
Jump Starting the Vehicle	277
Towing Points - Excluding: ST	279

Fuses

Fuse Box Locations	280
Fuse Specification Chart	281
Changing a Fuse	292

Maintenance

General Information	294
Opening and Closing the Hood	294
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™ LHD	296
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™ RHD	298
Under Hood Overview - 1.1L Duratec, LHD	299

Under Hood Overview - 1.1L Duratec, RHD	300
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel, LHD	301
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel, RHD	303
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™ LHD	304
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™ RHD	306
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L EcoBoost™/1.1L Duratec	307
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel	307
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L EcoBoost™	307
Engine Oil Check	307
Oil Change Indicator Reset	308
Engine Cooling Fan - Gasoline	309
Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel	309
Engine Coolant Check	309
Brake Fluid Check	310
Clutch Fluid Check	311
Changing the 12V Battery	311
Washer Fluid Check	313
Checking the Wiper Blades	313
Changing the Front Wiper Blades	313
Changing the Rear Wiper Blades	313
Removing a Headlamp	314

Table of Contents

Removing a Rear Lamp	315
Changing a Bulb	316

Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior	323
Cleaning the Interior	324
Cleaning Leather Seats	326
Repairing Minor Paint Damage	326
Cleaning the Wheels	326
Body Styling Kits	327

Wheels and Tires

General Information	328
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit - Vehicles With: Temporary Mobility Kit	328
Tire Care	332
Using Winter Tires	333
Using Snow Chains	334
Tire Pressure Monitoring System	334
Changing a Road Wheel - Vehicles With: Spare Wheel	338
Tire Pressures - 1.0L EcoBoost™, Manual Transmission	346
Tire Pressures - 1.0L EcoBoost™, Automatic Transmission	349
Tire Pressures - 1.1L	353
Tire Pressures - 1.5L Diesel	356

Tire Pressures - 1.5L EcoBoost™	360
Lug Nuts	362

Capacities and Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions - Excluding: Active/Van	363
Towbar Dimensions	364
Vehicle Identification Plate	366
Vehicle Identification Number	367
Capacities and Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™	367
Capacities and Specifications - 1.1L Duratec	370
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel	373
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L EcoBoost™	376
Bulb Specification Chart	379
Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.0L EcoBoost™	382
Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.1L Duratec	383
Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel	384
Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.5L EcoBoost™	385
Fuel Consumption Figures	386

Connected Vehicle

What Is a Connected Vehicle	387
Connected Vehicle Requirements	387
Connected Vehicle Limitations	387
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network	387
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network	387
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: Modem	388
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: SYNC 3/SYNC 2.5	389

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot	391
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password	391

Audio System

Audio Unit - Vehicles Without: SYNC	392
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC 3	393
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5	395
AM/FM Radio - Vehicles Without: SYNC	396
AM/FM Radio - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5	396
Digital Radio - Vehicles Without: SYNC	397

Table of Contents

Digital Radio - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5	398
Audio Unit Clock and Date Displays - Vehicles Without: SYNC	398
Audio Unit Clock and Date Displays - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5	398
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device - Vehicles Without: SYNC	399
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5	399
Compact Disc Player - Vehicles Without: SYNC	399
Compact Disc Player - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5	400
Streaming Bluetooth Audio - Vehicles Without: SYNC	400
Streaming Bluetooth Audio - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5	400
Playing Media From a USB Device - Vehicles Without: SYNC	401
Playing Media From a USB Device - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5	401
USB Port	402
Apps - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5	402
Using Voice Recognition	405
Audio System – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5	406

SYNC™ 3

General Information	408
Using Voice Recognition	410
Entertainment	418
Climate	420
Phone	423
Navigation	425
Apps	430
Settings	431
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting	433

Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility	445
End User License Agreement	449
Declaration of Conformity	476

Introduction

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Your vehicle could have components that use open source software. For additional information, visit <http://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html>.

ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

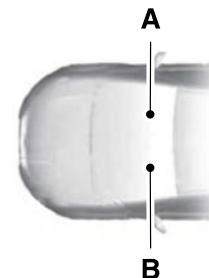
Note: This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.

Note: Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.

Note: Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

Note: Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



E154903

- A Right-hand side.
- B Left-hand side.

SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.



Safety alert.



See the Owner's Manual.



Air conditioning system.

Introduction



Anti-lock braking system.



Avoid smoking, flames or sparks.



Battery.



Battery acid.



Brake fluid level.



Brake system.



Brake failure.



Cabin air filter.



Check fuel cap.



Child safety door lock.



Child safety door unlock.



Child seat lower anchor.



Child seat tether anchor.



Cruise control.



Do not open when hot.



Electronic power steering malfunction.



Engine air filter.



Engine coolant.



Engine coolant temperature.



Engine oil.



Explosive gas.



Fan warning.



Fasten seatbelt.



Front airbag.



Front fog lamps.



Fuel pump reset.



Fuse compartment.



Hazard warning flashers.



Heated rear window.



Heated windshield.

Introduction



Interior luggage compartment release.



Jack.



Keep out of reach of children.



Lighting control.



Low tire pressure warning.



Maintain correct fluid level.



Panic alarm.



Parking aid.



Parking brake.



Power steering fluid.



Power windows.



Power window lockout.



Check Engine.



Service engine soon.



Side airbag.



Shield the eyes.



Stability control.



Windshield wash and wipe.

REACH

We are committed to promoting the responsible manufacturing, handling and use of our products and support the underlying goals of **REACH**, a European Union regulation that concerns the registration, evaluation, authorisation and restriction of chemicals.

We specifically support Regulation EC 1907/2006 Article 33(1) that relates to substances of very high concern which appear on the current list for authorisation.

If these substances do exist in a product, it is important to guarantee their safe use so the regulation is designed to enable you to take any appropriate risk management measures.

To find out more about the **REACH** directive, search **REACH** on the local Ford website.

Note: To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/global-links.html#sOf0>.

Introduction

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when

Introduction

using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

Data Privacy



WARNING: Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

Note: Error logs are reset following a service or repair.

Note: We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.
- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

Data Privacy

SERVICE DATA

Our dealers collect service data through the data link connector in your vehicle. They use service data, for example error logs, to help them if you take your vehicle for repair. They share this data with our technical team, if required, to help with diagnosis. In addition to using the information for diagnosis and repair, we use and share service data with our service providers, for example parts suppliers, where required and where permitted by law, for continuous improvement or with other information that we have about you, for example your contact information, to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law. Our service providers are equally required by law to protect your data and retain it in accordance with data retention policies.

Note: *Third party repair facilities can also collect service data through the data link connector.*

EVENT DATA

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

Data Privacy

SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe. See **Settings** (page 431).

Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA - VEHICLES WITH: MODEM



The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network, receive automatic software updates and send vehicle-related information to us, for example diagnostic information. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit www.FordConnected.com or refer to your local Ford website.

Note: *The modem continues to send this information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing vehicle data by changing the modem settings.*

Note: *The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.*

Note: *To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit www.FordConnected.com.*

MOBILE DEVICE DATA - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **Apps** (page 430).

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

Data Privacy

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the master reset function to erase the stored information. See **Settings** (page 431).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Note: To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit www.FordConnected.com.

EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

Note: *You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.*

Environment

PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit www.sustainability.ford.com.

Visual Search

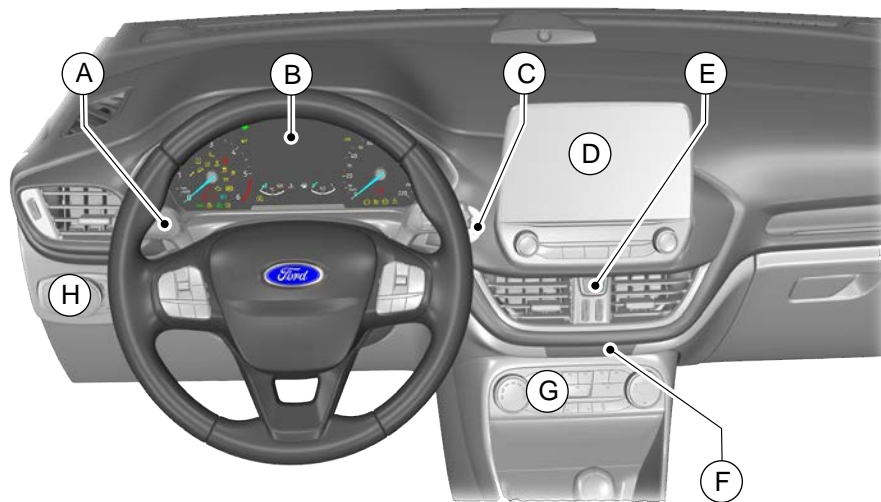
STEERING WHEEL



- A Cruise control button. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 212).
- B Speed limiter button. See **Intelligent Speed Limiter** (page 235).
- C Voice control button. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 405). See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 410).
- D Information display controls. See **General Information** (page 113).

Visual Search

INSTRUMENT PANEL - LHD



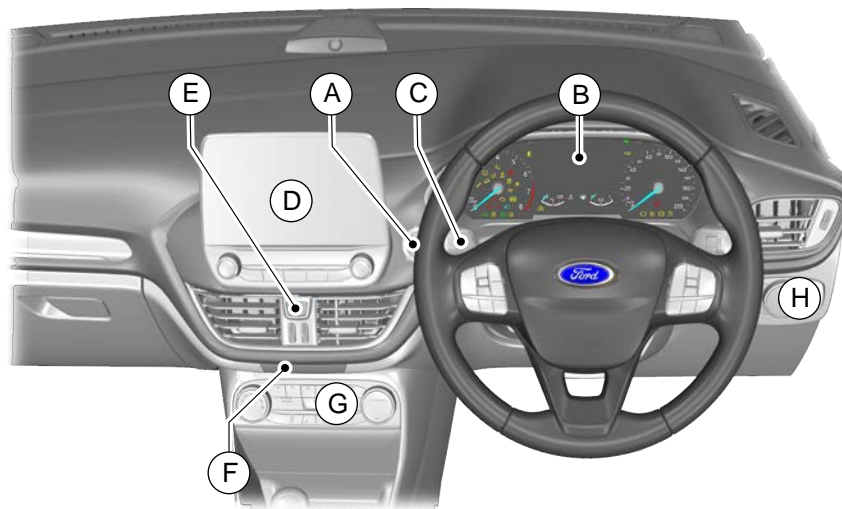
- A Lane keeping system button. See **Lane Keeping System** (page 240).
- B Instrument cluster. See **Gauges** (page 103).

Visual Search

- C Push button ignition switch. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 154).
- D Audio unit. See **Audio System** (page 392). See **SYNC™ 3** (page 408).
- E Hazard flasher switch. See **Hazard Flashers** (page 276).
- F Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. See **Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off** (page 47).
- G Climate controls. See **Climate Control** (page 134).
- H Lighting control. See **Lighting Control** (page 86).

Visual Search

INSTRUMENT PANEL - RHD



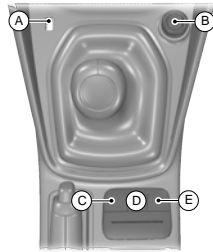
- A Push button ignition switch. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 154).
- B Instrument cluster. See **Gauges** (page 103).

Visual Search

- C Lane keeping system button. See **Lane Keeping System** (page 240).
- D Audio unit. See **Audio System** (page 392). See **SYNC™ 3** (page 408).
- E Hazard flasher switch. See **Hazard Flashers** (page 276).
- F Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. See **Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off** (page 47).
- G Climate controls. See **Climate Control** (page 134).
- H Lighting control. See **Lighting Control** (page 86).

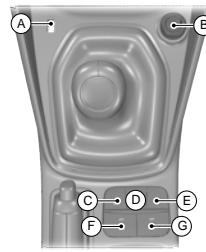
Visual Search

CENTER CONSOLE - LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS (LPG), VEHICLES WITHOUT: ACTIVE PARK ASSIST/FRONT PARKING AID



- A USB port. See **USB Port** (page 402).
- B Auxiliary power point. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 149).
- C LPG button.
- D Traction control switch. See **Using Traction Control** (page 198).
- E Auto-start-stop-button. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 168).

CENTER CONSOLE - LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS (LPG), VEHICLES WITH: ACTIVE PARK ASSIST/FRONT PARKING AID/REAR PARKING AID

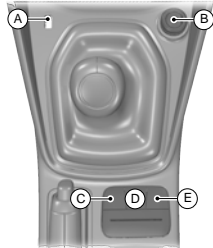


- A USB port. See **USB Port** (page 402).
- B Auxiliary power point. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 149).
- C LPG button.
- D Traction control switch. See **Using Traction Control** (page 198).
- E Active park assist button. See **Active Park Assist** (page 206).

- F Auto-Start-Stop button. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 168).
- G Parking aid button. See **Rear Parking Aid** (page 200). See **Front Parking Aid** (page 202).

Visual Search

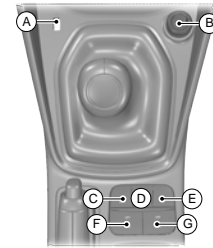
CENTER CONSOLE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, LHD, VEHICLES WITHOUT: ACTIVE PARK ASSIST/FRONT PARKING AID/REAR PARKING AID, EXCLUDING: LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS (LPG)/ST



- A USB port. See **USB Port** (page 402).
- B Auxiliary power point. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 149).
- C Drive control button. See **Drive Control** (page 260).

- D Traction control button. See **Using Traction Control** (page 198).
- E Auto-start-stop button. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 168).

CENTER CONSOLE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, LHD, VEHICLES WITH: ACTIVE PARK ASSIST/FRONT PARKING AID/REAR PARKING AID, EXCLUDING: LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS (LPG)/ST

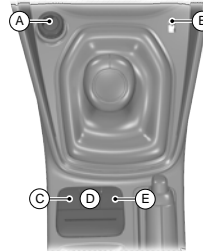


- A USB port. See **USB Port** (page 402).
- B Auxiliary power point. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 149).
- C Drive control button. See **Drive Control** (page 260).

Visual Search

- D Traction control button. See **Using Traction Control** (page 198).
- E Active park assist button. See **Active Park Assist** (page 206).
- F Auto-start-stop button. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 168).
- G Parking aid button. See **Rear Parking Aid** (page 200). See **Front Parking Aid** (page 202).

CENTER CONSOLE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, RHD, VEHICLES WITHOUT: ACTIVE PARK ASSIST/FRONT PARKING AID/REAR PARKING AID, EXCLUDING: LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS (LPG)/ST

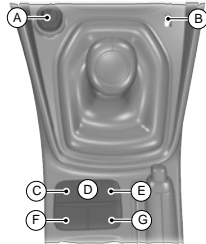


- A Auxiliary power point. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 149).
- B USB port. See **USB Port** (page 402).
- C Drive control button. See **Drive Control** (page 260).

- D Traction control button. See **Using Traction Control** (page 198).
- E Auto-start-stop button. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 168).

Visual Search

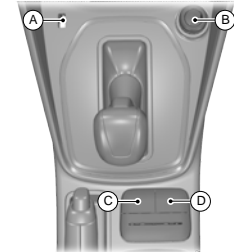
CENTER CONSOLE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, RHD, VEHICLES WITH: ACTIVE PARK ASSIST/FRONT PARKING AID/REAR PARKING AID, EXCLUDING: LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS (LPG)/ST



- A Auxiliary power point. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 149).
- B USB port. See **USB Port** (page 402).
- C Drive control button. See **Drive Control** (page 260).

- D Traction control button. See **Using Traction Control** (page 198).
- E Active park assist button. See **Active Park Assist** (page 206).
- F Auto-start-stop button. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 168).
- G Parking aid button. See **Rear Parking Aid** (page 200). See **Front Parking Aid** (page 202).

CENTER CONSOLE - 6-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, LHD, VEHICLES WITHOUT: ACTIVE PARK ASSIST/FRONT PARKING AID/REAR PARKING AID, EXCLUDING: LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS (LPG)/ST



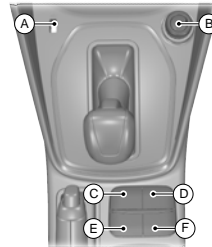
- A USB port. See **USB Port** (page 402).
- B Auxiliary power point. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 149).

Visual Search

- C Auto-Start-Stop button. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 170).
- D Traction control switch. See **Using Traction Control** (page 198).

CENTER CONSOLE - 6-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, LHD, VEHICLES WITH: ACTIVE PARK ASSIST/FRONT PARKING AID/REAR PARKING AID, EXCLUDING: LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS (LPG)/ST

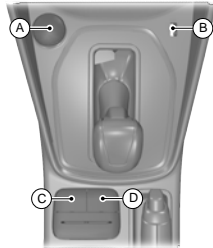
- D Traction control switch. See **Using Traction Control** (page 198).
- E Parking aid button. See **Rear Parking Aid** (page 200). See **Front Parking Aid** (page 202).
- F Active park assist button. See **Active Park Assist** (page 206).



- A USB port. See **USB Port** (page 402).
- B Auxiliary power point. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 149).
- C Auto-Start-Stop button. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 170).

Visual Search

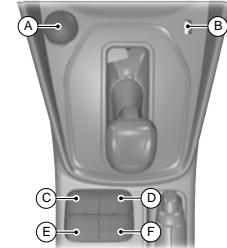
CENTER CONSOLE - 6-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, RHD, VEHICLES WITHOUT: ACTIVE PARK ASSIST/FRONT PARKING AID/REAR PARKING AID, EXCLUDING: LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS (LPG)/ST



- A Auxiliary power point. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 149).
- B USB port. See **USB Port** (page 402).

- C Auto-Start-Stop button. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 170).
- D Traction control switch. See **Using Traction Control** (page 198).

CENTER CONSOLE - 6-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, RHD, VEHICLES WITH: ACTIVE PARK ASSIST/FRONT PARKING AID/REAR PARKING AID, EXCLUDING: LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS (LPG)/ST

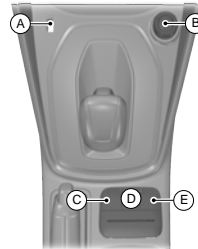


- A Auxiliary power point. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 149).
- B USB port. See **USB Port** (page 402).
- C Auto-Start-Stop button. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 170).

Visual Search

- D Traction control switch. See **Using Traction Control** (page 198).
- E Parking aid button. See **Rear Parking Aid** (page 200). See **Front Parking Aid** (page 202).
- F Active park assist button. See **Active Park Assist** (page 206).

CENTER CONSOLE - 7-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, LHD, VEHICLES WITHOUT: ACTIVE PARK ASSIST/FRONT PARKING AID/REAR PARKING AID, EXCLUDING: LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS (LPG)/ST

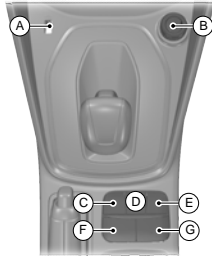


- D Traction control switch. See **Using Traction Control** (page 198).
- E Auto-start-stop button. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 170).

- A USB port. See **USB Port** (page 402).
- B Auxiliary power point. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 149).
- C Drive control button. See **Drive Control** (page 260).

Visual Search

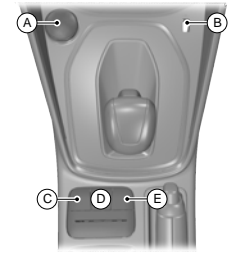
CENTER CONSOLE - 7-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, LHD, VEHICLES WITH: ACTIVE PARK ASSIST/FRONT PARKING AID/REAR PARKING AID, EXCLUDING: LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS (LPG)/ST



- A USB port. See **USB Port** (page 402).
- B Auxiliary power point. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 149).
- C Drive control button. See **Drive Control** (page 260).

- D Traction control switch. See **Using Traction Control** (page 198).
- E Active park assist button. See **Active Park Assist** (page 206).
- F Auto-Start-Stop button. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 170).
- G Parking aid button. See **Rear Parking Aid** (page 200). See **Front Parking Aid** (page 202).

CENTER CONSOLE - 7-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, RHD, VEHICLES WITHOUT: ACTIVE PARK ASSIST/FRONT PARKING AID/REAR PARKING AID, EXCLUDING: LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS (LPG)/ST

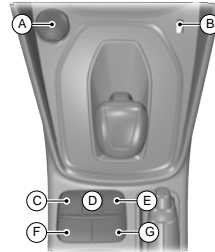


- A Auxiliary power point. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 149).
- B USB port. See **USB Port** (page 402).
- C Drive control button. See **Drive Control** (page 260).

Visual Search

- D Traction control switch. See **Using Traction Control** (page 198).
- E Auto-start-stop button. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 170).

CENTER CONSOLE - 7-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, RHD, VEHICLES WITH: ACTIVE PARK ASSIST/FRONT PARKING AID/REAR PARKING AID, EXCLUDING: LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS (LPG)/ST



- A Auxiliary power point. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 149).
- B USB port. See **USB Port** (page 402).
- C Drive control button. See **Drive Control** (page 260).

- D Traction control switch. See **Using Traction Control** (page 198).
- E Active park assist button. See **Active Park Assist** (page 206).
- F Auto-Start-Stop button. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 170).
- G Parking aid button. See **Rear Parking Aid** (page 200). See **Front Parking Aid** (page 202).

Child Safety

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS



E161855



E68916

WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.

WARNING: Do not modify child restraints in any way.

WARNING: Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child restraints checked.

Only child restraints certified to ECE-R129 or ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle. A choice of these are available from an authorized dealer.

Note: *Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.*

When using a child restraint on a front seat, follow these seat positioning guidelines:

- The child restraint must not be in contact with the instrument panel.
- Position the passenger seat as far rearward as possible and route the seatbelt forward and downward from the B-pillar ring to the child restraint.
- If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seatbelt without slack remaining, adjust the seat backrest to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat.

Note: *When using a child restraint on a rear seat, adjust the front seat to a position to prevent contact with the child's feet or legs.*

Child Safety

Child Restraints for Different Mass Groups

Use the correct child restraint as follows:

Baby Safety Restraint (Group 0+)



E68918

Secure children that weigh less than 13 kg (29 lb) in a rearward facing baby safety restraint (Group 0+) on the rear seat.

Child Safety Restraint (Group 1)



E68920

Secure children that weigh between 13 kg (29 lb) and 18 kg (40 lb) in a child safety restraint (Group 1) on the rear seat.

Booster Seats

WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.

WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

WARNING: Do not put the seatbelt under your child's arm or behind its back.

WARNING: Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height.

WARNING: Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

WARNING: Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. If necessary, adjust the seat backrest to an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

WARNING: You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

Child Safety


Booster Seat (Group 2)



Secure children that weigh greater than 15 kg (33 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall in a booster seat or on a booster cushion.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across their hips.


Booster Cushion (Group 3)

 **WARNING:** When using a booster cushion, make sure you adjust the vehicle head restraint on that seating position.



Secure children that weigh greater than 22 kg (49 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall on a booster cushion.

ISOFIX Anchor Points

 **WARNING:** Use an anti-rotation device when using the ISOFIX system. We recommend the use of a top tether or support leg.

Your vehicle has ISOFIX anchor points that accommodate universally approved ISOFIX child restraints.

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a top tether.



E174928

The ISOFIX system has two rigid attachment arms on the child restraint. These attach to anchor points on the outermost rear seats, where the cushion and backrest meet.

Child Safety

Note: If you are purchasing an ISOFIX child restraint, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations. See **Child Restraint Positioning** (page 37).

Top Tether Anchor Points



E87146

For child restraints with a top tether, tether anchor points are on the rear of the second row seats.

Attaching a Child Restraint With Top Tethers



WARNING: Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.



WARNING: Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.

1. Attach the tether strap to the anchor point.

Note: Where applicable, remove the luggage cover to ease installation. See **Luggage Covers** (page 264).

Note: You may need to lift or remove the head restraint to ease installation. See **Head Restraints** (page 142).



E87145

2. Push the child restraint back firmly to engage the ISOFIX lower anchor points.
3. Tighten the tether strap in line with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Attaching a Child Restraint With a Support Leg



WARNING: If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.

Child Safety

WARNING: Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

WARNING: Make sure that the child restraint manufacturer lists your vehicle as suitable for use with this type of child restraint.



E185352

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a support leg.

CHILD RESTRAINT POSITIONING

WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

WARNING: If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.

WARNING: If you use a child restraint and a seatbelt, make sure that the seatbelt is not slack or twisted.

WARNING: Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. If necessary, adjust the seat backrest to an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

WARNING: You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

Child Safety

Seating Positions	Mass Group Categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	15–25 kg (33–55 lb)	22–36 kg (49–79 lb)
Front passenger seat with airbag ON .	X	X	UF ¹	UF ¹	UF ¹
Front passenger seat with airbag OFF .	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹
Rear seats. ²	U	U	U	U	U

¹ We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child restraint, on the rear seat.

² Do not use a child restraint with a support leg on the rear center seat unless stated as suitable in the child restraint manufacturer's product information.

X Not suitable for children in this mass group.

U Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF Suitable for universal category forward facing child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

Child Safety

ISOFIX Child Restraints

Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)
Front passenger seat.	Size class.	No ISOFIX				
	Size type.					
Rear outermost seat ISOFIX.	Size class.	F, G ¹	E ¹	C, D, E ¹	A, B, B1 ¹	C, D ¹
	Fixture.	L1, L2 ¹	R1 ¹	R1, R2X, R2, R3 ¹	F2, F2X, F3 ¹	R2X, R2, R3 ¹
	Size type.	IL	IL	IL	IL, IUF	IL
Rear center seat.	Size class.	No ISOFIX				
	Size type.					

¹ The size class and fixture are defined for both universal and semi-universal child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on ISOFIX child restraints.

IL Suitable for use with particular ISOFIX child restraint systems in the semi-universal category. Refer to the child restraint system manufacturer vehicle recommendation list for additional information.

IUF Suitable for use with forward facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the universal category.

Child Safety

Recommended Child Restraints

Mass Group Categories	Manufacturer	Model	Attachment
0+ 0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	Britax Römer.	Baby Safe Plus with ISOFIX base. ¹	ISOFIX base or seatbelt only.
1 9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	Britax Römer.	Duo Plus. ¹	ISOFIX and top tether anchors or seatbelt only.
2 15–25 kg (33–55 lb)	Britax Römer.	KidFix. ^{1, 2}	ISOFIX and seatbelt or seatbelt only.
3 22–36 kg (49–79 lb)	Britax Römer.	KidFix. ^{1, 2}	ISOFIX and seatbelt or seatbelt only.

¹We recommend that you secure children using an ISOFIX child restraint on the rear outermost seats.

²We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only.

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

Child Safety

i-Size Child Restraints

	Front Passenger Seat	Rear Outermost Seats	Rear Center Seat
Rearward facing child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag ON .	X	-	-
i-Size child restraint systems.	X	i-U	X
Suitable booster fixture.	B2, B3 ¹	B2, B3 ¹	B2, B3 ¹

¹ The fixture is defined for booster child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on i-Size boosters.

i-U Suitable for use with forward and rearward facing i-Size child restraint systems.

X Not suitable for use with i-Size child restraint systems.

Child Safety

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



WARNING: You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



A child safety lock is on the rear edge of each rear door. You must set the child safety lock separately on each door.

Left-Hand Side

Turn the key clockwise to switch the child lock on and counterclockwise to switch it off.

Right-Hand Side

Turn the key counterclockwise to switch the child lock on and clockwise to switch it off.

Seatbelts

FASTENING THE SEATBELTS

WARNING: Insert the tongue into the buckle until you hear a distinct click. You have not fastened the seatbelt correctly if you do not hear a click.

WARNING: Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.



E74124

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

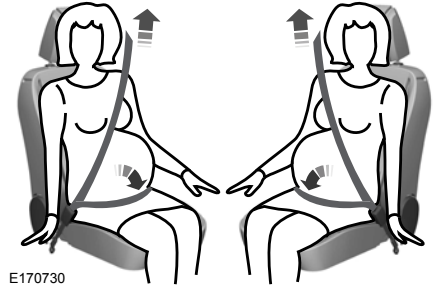
Note: It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle until you hear a distinct click.

Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy

WARNING: Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.



E170730

Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

Seatbelts

SEATBELT REMINDER

Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp

A warning lamp illuminates if the ignition is on and any of the following occur:

- A front seat is occupied and the seatbelt has not been fastened.
- A rear seatbelt has been recently unfastened.



The warning lamp illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

Fasten Seatbelt Audible Warning

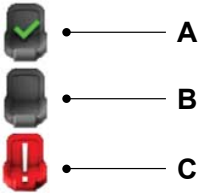
A warning tone sounds if the warning lamp illuminates and your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

The warning tone sounds for up to five minutes or until you fasten your seatbelt.

Switching the Audible Warning Off

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Seatbelt Status



E267667

- A Seatbelt fastened.
- B Seatbelt not fastened.
- C Rear seatbelt recently unfastened.

To view the seatbelt status, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Information	Press the OK button.
Seatbelts	Press the OK button.

Seatbelts

Seatbelt Status Information Messages

Message	Description
Rear belt monitor malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Supplementary Restraints System

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

WARNING: Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

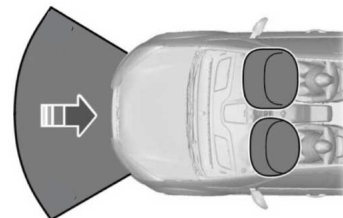
WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.

Note: A loud bang sounds and there is a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

Note: Only wipe airbag covers with a damp cloth.

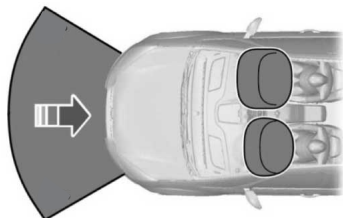
DRIVER AIRBAG



The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbag inflates within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflates on contact with the occupant. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

Supplementary Restraints System

PASSENGER AIRBAG



The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbag inflates within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflates on contact with the occupant. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

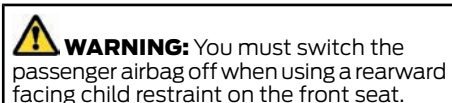
SWITCHING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG ON AND OFF



E71313

The passenger airbag on and off indicators are close to the climate control unit.

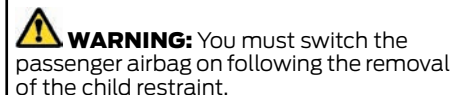
Switching the Passenger Airbag Off



1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Passenger airbag**.
4. Select **Off**.
5. Press and hold the **OK** button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.
6. Switch the ignition off and on and check that the passenger airbag off indicator illuminates.

Note: If it does not illuminate, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Switching the Passenger Airbag On



1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Passenger airbag**.
4. Select **On**.

Supplementary Restraints System

5. Press and hold the **OK** button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.
6. Switch the ignition off and on and check that the passenger airbag on indicator illuminates.

Note: *If it does not illuminate, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

SIDE AIRBAGS

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNING: Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

WARNING: Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.

WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



E72658

The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front seat backrest. There is a label attached to the side of each backrest to indicate this.

Supplementary Restraints System



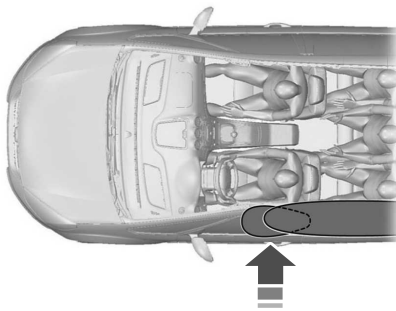
The side airbags are designed to inflate between the door panel and the occupant to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant lateral crash. It might also deploy during a significant frontal crash. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



The airbags are above the front and rear side windows.

The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant lateral or frontal angled crash. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor lateral and frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

Automatic Crash Notification System

EMERGENCY ASSISTANCE



WARNING: Unless the Emergency Assistance setting is on prior to a collision, the system does not attempt to place an emergency call. This could delay the response time, increasing the risk of serious injury or death.



WARNING: For this feature to work, your mobile phone must be Bluetooth-enabled and compatible with the system.



WARNING: Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent Emergency Assistance from working properly.

Note: *Not all accidents activate the system. If an accident does trigger the system, it initiates a call to the emergency services. Do not wait for the system to initiate a call if you are able to do so. Call emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear the system within five seconds of the accident, the system could be non-functional.*

If an accident results in an attempt to deploy an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or to shut off the fuel pump, the system initiates a call to the emergency services.

Note: *Before setting the feature on, please read the important notice about the Emergency Assistance feature and the Emergency Assistance privacy notice later in this section for important information.*

Note: *When you switch Emergency Assistance on or off, the settings apply to all paired mobile phones. If you switch Emergency Assistance off and a previously paired phone connects when you switch the ignition on, either a voice message plays, a display message or icon is shown or both.*

Note: *Every mobile phone operates differently. While Emergency Assistance works with most mobile phones, some mobile phones may experience difficulties using this feature.*

Note: *In the case of an emergency, the system, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public emergency services. The system does not deploy the rescue operations. The local public emergency service deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.*

To make sure that Emergency Assistance works correctly:

- The system must have power and be working correctly at the time of the crash and during feature activation and use.
- You must switch on the feature before a crash.
- You must have a cell phone connected to the system.
- In certain countries, it may be necessary to have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in order to place and maintain an emergency call.
- A connected cell phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the crash.
- A connected cell phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- Your vehicle must have battery power.

Automatic Crash Notification System

Note: *This feature only works in a country where Emergency Assistance can call the local emergency services. For additional information, please refer to the local Ford website.*

In the Event of a Crash

Before making a call:

- If you do not cancel the call, an introductory message plays for the emergency operator. After this message, there is hands-free communication between your vehicle's occupants and the operator.
- The system provides a short window of time (approximately 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you do not cancel the call, the system initiates a call to the emergency services.
- The system plays a message letting you know when it attempts to make an emergency call. You can cancel the call by selecting the relevant button or by pressing the end call button on the steering wheel.

Note: *Not every crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off, which may turn on Emergency Assistance. However, if Emergency Assistance is triggered, the system tries to contact the emergency services. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses connection to the system, it searches for and tries to connect to any available previously paired cell phone and initiates a call to the emergency services.*

During a call:

- Emergency Assistance uses your vehicle GPS or cellular network information when available to determine the most appropriate language to use. It alerts the emergency operator of the crash and delivers the introductory message. This may include your vehicle GPS coordinates.
- The language the system uses to interact with the occupants of your vehicle may differ from the language used to deliver information to the emergency operator.

- After the delivery of the introductory message the voice line opens so that you can speak hands-free with the emergency operator.
- When the line is connected, you must be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location information immediately.

Note: *While the system provides information to the emergency operator, the system plays a message letting you know it is sending important information. It then lets you know when the line is open to start hands-free communication.*

Note: *During an Emergency Assistance call, an emergency priority screen appears which contains vehicle GPS coordinates when available.*

Note: *It is possible that GPS location information is not available at the time of the crash; in this case, Emergency Assistance will still attempt to place an emergency call.*

Note: *It is possible that the emergency services will not receive the GPS coordinates; in this case, hands-free communication with an emergency operator is available.*

Automatic Crash Notification System

Note: *The emergency operator may also receive information from the cellular network such as cell phone number, cell phone location and cell phone carrier name independent from Emergency Assistance.*

Emergency Assistance may not work if:

- Your cell phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in the crash.
- The vehicle battery or the system has no power.
- A crash ejects your cell phone from your vehicle.
- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in your cell phone.
- You are in a country where Emergency Assistance cannot call the local emergency services. For additional information, please refer to the local Ford website.

Important Information About Emergency Assistance

Emergency Assistance does not currently call emergency services in the following countries:

- Albania.
- Armenia.

- Azerbaijan.
- Belarus.
- Bosnia and Herzegovina.
- Georgia.
- Macedonia.
- Moldova.
- Netherlands.
- Russia.
- Ukraine.

Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice

When you switch on Emergency Assistance, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut off. This feature has the capability to disclose your location information to the emergency operator or other details about your vehicle or crash to provide the most appropriate emergency services.

If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch on the feature.

Keys and Remote Controls

GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 10 m (33 ft).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around your vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other radio transmitters, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, wireless remote controls, cell phones, battery chargers and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: Make sure your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.

Note: If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.

Note: The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.

REMOTE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: KEYLESS ENTRY

Passive Key

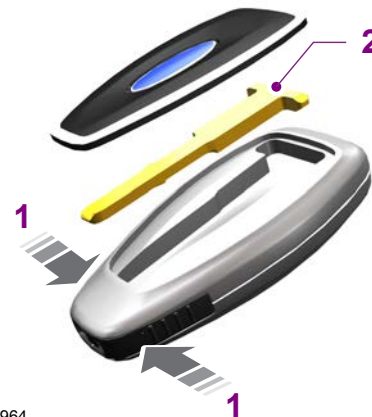


E266840

The key must be in your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

Removable Key Blade

The passive key also contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.



E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.

Keys and Remote Controls

Changing the Remote Control Battery



WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

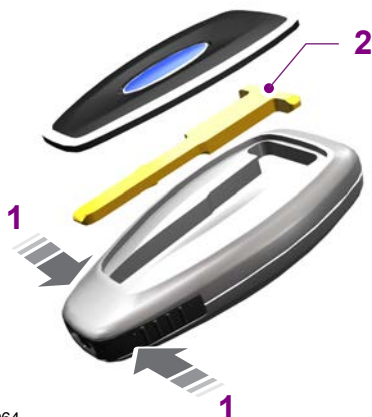


WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



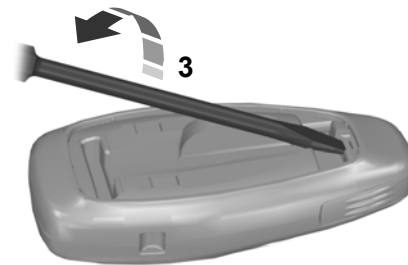
Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.



E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.



E105362

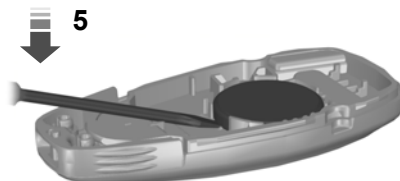
3. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully separate the two halves of the remote control.

Keys and Remote Controls



E119190

4. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to separate the two halves of the remote control.



E125860

5. Carefully remove the battery with the screwdriver.

Note: Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.

6. Insert a new battery with the + facing downward.

Note: Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

7. Assemble the two halves of the remote control.

8. Reinstall the key blade.

Locating Your Vehicle

Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The direction indicators will flash.

Remote Control Information Messages

Message	Action
Key battery low Replace soon	Displays when the remote control battery requires replacing.

Keys and Remote Controls

REMOTE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: REMOTE FLIP KEY

Use the key blade to start your vehicle and unlock or lock the driver door from outside your vehicle. The buttons on the key operate the remote control function.



E186181

Changing the Remote Control Battery

WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.



E248483

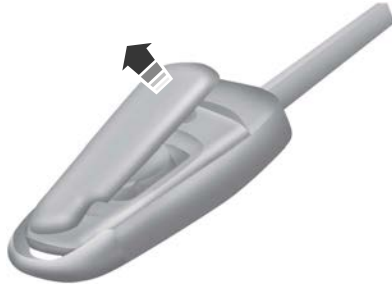
1. Press the release button.



E248514

2. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and gently push the clip.
3. Press the clip down to release the battery cover.

Keys and Remote Controls



4. Carefully remove the cover.



E151800

5. Insert a screwdriver in the position shown to release the battery.

Note: Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.



6. Remove the battery.
7. Insert a new battery with the + facing upward.

Note: Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

8. Reinstall the battery cover.

Locating Your Vehicle

Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The direction indicators will flash.

Keys and Remote Controls

Remote Control Information Messages

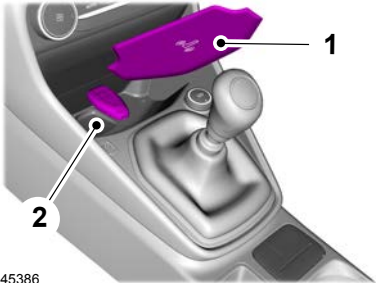
Message	Action
Key battery low Replace soon	Displays when the remote control battery requires replacing.

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle.

To re-program the passive anti-theft system see an authorized dealer.

PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION



E245386

1. Remove the rubber mat.
2. Place the passive key in the position shown, with the buttons facing upward.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The system is designed to promote good driving behaviors using keys that you have programmed with some restricted settings.

MYKEY SETTINGS - EXCLUDING: ST

Non-Configurable Settings

Seatbelt Reminder

The audio system mutes when the seatbelt reminder turns on. The seatbelt reminder cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Early Low Fuel

The low fuel level warning lamp turns on earlier.

Driving and Parking Aids

Parking aids, blind spot information system and cross traffic alert turn on when you start the engine and cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Pre-collision assist and lane keeping alert turn on when you start the engine, but can be switched off with a MyKey.

A new destination in the navigation system can only be set using voice commands, when using a MyKey and your vehicle is moving.

Configurable Settings

You can configure the following settings after creating a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 60).

Speed Limit



WARNING: Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

You can set a speed limit for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed when using a MyKey.

Speed Reminder

You can set a speed reminder for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle exceeds the set speed.

Audio System Volume Limit

The audio system maximum volume is reduced. A message appears in the information display if you attempt to exceed the volume limit. Automatic volume control turns off.

Emergency Assistance

If you set emergency assistance to be always on, it cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Do Not Disturb

If you set do not disturb to be always on, it cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Traction Control

If you set traction control to be always on, it cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

CREATING A MYKEY - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

Switch the ignition on using an admin key.

To create a MyKey, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
MyKey	Press the OK button.
Create MyKey	Press and hold the OK button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.
	Switch the ignition off.

Note: We recommend that you label this key.

MyKey Information Messages

Message	Description
Key is already a MyKey	Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.
Key restricted at next start. Label this key	Displays to confirm that the key is restricted after you switch the ignition off.

CREATING A MYKEY - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Place an admin key in the backup position. See **Passive Key Backup Position** (page 58).
2. Switch the ignition on.

To create a MyKey, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
MyKey	Press the OK button.
Create MyKey	Press and hold the OK button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.
	Switch the ignition off.

Note: We recommend that you label this key.

MyKey Information Messages

Message	Description
Place key in backup location	Displays when trying to create a MyKey and the key is not placed in the backup position. See Passive Key Backup Position (page 58).
Key is already a MyKey	Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.
Key restricted at next start. Label this key	Displays to confirm that the key is restricted after you switch the ignition off.

PROGRAMMING A MYKEY

You can only program MyKeys to the same settings.

Switch the ignition on using an admin key.

To program a MyKey, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
MyKey	Press the OK button. Select a setting and press the OK button. Configure the setting. Switch the ignition off.

CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

When you clear all MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.

Switch the ignition on using an admin key.

To clear all MyKeys, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
MyKey	Press the OK button.
Clear MyKeys	Press and hold the OK button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.

CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

Switch the ignition on.

To find information about the distance traveled using a MyKey and also the number of admin keys and MyKeys created for your vehicle, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
MyKey	Press the OK button.
MyKey info	Press the OK button.

MYKEY – TROUBLESHOOTING - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

What is an admin key?

- An admin key is a key that has not been created as a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 60).

Why can I not create a MyKey?

- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is the only admin key. There always has to be at least one admin key.

Why can I not program a MyKey?

- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 60).

Why can I not clear the MyKeys?

- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 60).

Why does the MyKey distance not accumulate?

- The key used to start the engine is an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 60).
- The MyKeys have been cleared.

MYKEY – TROUBLESHOOTING - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

What is an admin key?

- An admin key is a key that has not been created as a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 61).

Why can I not create a MyKey?

- The admin key is not placed in the backup position. See **Passive Key Backup Position** (page 58).
- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.

- The key used to switch the ignition on is the only admin key. There always has to be at least one admin key.
- The last MyKey was created without switching the ignition off.

Why can I not program a MyKey?

- The admin key is not inside your vehicle.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 61).

Why can I not clear the MyKeys?

- The admin key is not inside your vehicle.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 61).

Why does the MyKey distance not accumulate?

- The key used to start the engine is an admin key.
- An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle.

- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 61).
- The MyKeys have been cleared.

Why can I not start the engine with a MyKey?

- An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle.

Doors and Locks

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

Power Door Locks

The power door lock control is on the driver door.



Press the button to unlock all doors.



Press the button to lock all doors.

Door Lock Indicator

An LED on the power door lock control illuminates when you lock the door. It remains on for up to five minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Door Lock Switch Inhibitor

When you electronically lock your vehicle, the power door lock switch no longer operates after 20 seconds. You must unlock your vehicle with the remote control, or switch the ignition on, to restore function to these switches.

Remote Control

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.

Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors. One long flash of the direction indicators confirms that your vehicle has unlocked.

Note: You can unlock the driver door with the key. Use the key if the remote control does not operate.

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

You can program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks.

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

You can also change between the unlocking modes in the information display.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Locks**.
4. Select **Unlocking**.
5. Select **All doors** or **Driver's door**.

Central Locking



Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the direction indicators confirms that your vehicle has locked.

Note: The locking only operates if the front doors are fully closed.

Double Locking the Doors



WARNING: Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. You can only double lock the doors if all the doors are closed.



Press the button twice within three seconds. Three short flashes of the direction indicators confirm that your vehicle has double locked.

Note: If you unlock the liftgate, all other doors return to the central locked state. You must double lock your vehicle again.

Doors and Locks

Mislock

This warns you that your vehicle has not locked.

Vehicles with Anti-Theft Alarm

When you press the lock button once, the direction indicators do not flash if:

- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open.

The horn sounds when you press the lock button on the remote control again within three seconds and a door is open.

Vehicles without Anti-Theft Alarm

When you press the lock button on the remote control once, the direction indicators do not flash if:

- Any door or the liftgate is open.

The horn sounds when you press the lock button on the remote control again within three seconds and a door is open.

Switching Mislock On and Off

If you switch mislock off, the horn does not sound if you press the lock button on the remote control when a door is open.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.

2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Locks**.
4. Switch **Mislock chirp** on or off.

Auto Relock

The doors automatically relock if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm return to their previous state.

Autounlock

Autounlock unlocks all the doors when all of the following occur:

- The ignition is on, all the doors are closed and your vehicle is moving at a speed greater than 20 km/h (12 mph).
- Your vehicle comes to a stop and you switch the ignition off or to the accessory position.
- You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off or to the accessory position.

Switching Autounlock On and Off

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.

3. Select **Locks**.
4. Switch **Auto unlock** on or off.

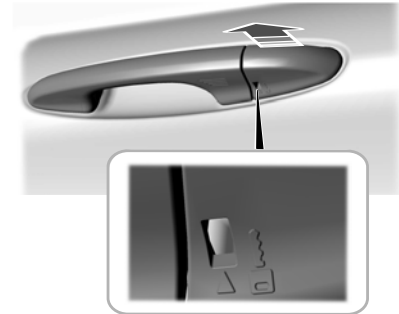
Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside

Use the power door lock control on the driver door to lock or unlock the doors from inside.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade

Removing the Lock Cylinder Cap

1. Release the key blade from the remote control. See **Remote Control** (page 53).



E243949

Doors and Locks

2. Fully insert the key blade into the key slot.
3. Gently pull the lock cylinder cap toward you to release it.
4. Insert the key blade into the lock cylinder.

Locking the Doors

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

Double Locking the Doors

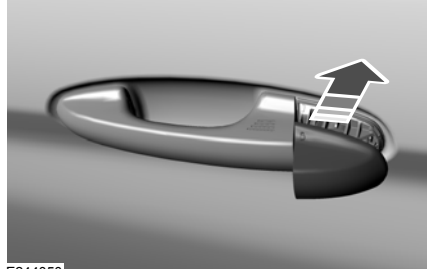
Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle twice within three seconds.

Unlocking the Driver Door

Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle.

Note: *If the child safety locks are on and you pull the interior handle, you only switch off the emergency locking, not the child safety lock. You can only open the doors using the external door handle.*

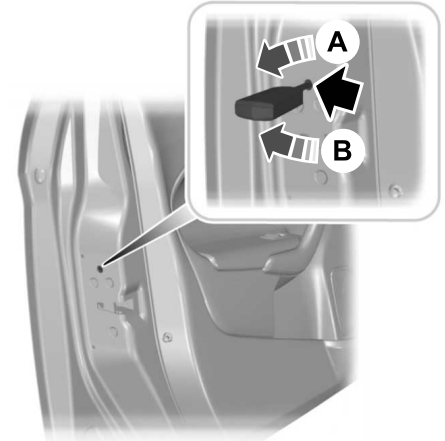
Reinstalling the Lock Cylinder Cap



1. Place the cap over the lock cylinder.
2. Push the cap forward until it clicks into place. Make sure you have properly installed the cap by trying to move it rearward.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors Individually with the Key Blade

Locking the Doors



If the central locking function does not operate, lock the doors individually using the key in the position shown.

Left-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

Doors and Locks

Right-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock.

Unlocking the Doors

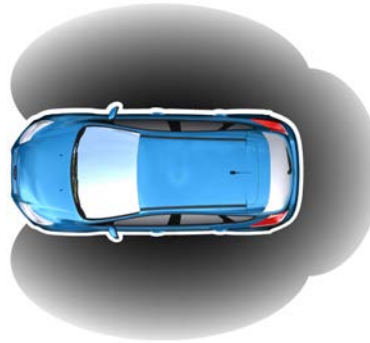
If the central locking function does not operate, unlock the driver door and then unlock all other doors individually by pulling the interior door handles.

Note: When the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be locked individually until the central locking function has been repaired.

KEYLESS ENTRY

Principle of Operation

The system allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle without taking the passive key out of your pocket or purse.



E78276

A valid passive key must be within one of the three external detection ranges. These are approximately 1.5 m (5 ft) from the front door handles and the liftgate.

The system could not function if:

- The passive key remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The passive key battery has no charge.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

If the system does not function, use the remote control or the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Locking the Doors

Lock sensors are on the top of the exterior front door handles.



E248554

Touch a lock sensor once to lock your vehicle and arm the alarm. The direction indicators flash.

Touch a lock sensor twice within three seconds to double lock your vehicle and arm the alarm. The direction indicators flash. Do not touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

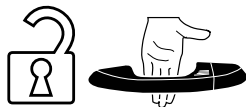
Note: Your vehicle does not automatically lock. If you do not touch a lock sensor your vehicle remains unlocked.

Doors and Locks

After locking the doors with the lock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can unlock your vehicle. This delay lets you pull the handle to make sure your vehicle is locked. When the delay period is over, you can unlock the doors again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

Unlocking the Doors

Unlock sensors are on the back of the exterior front door handles.



E248553

Touch the unlock sensor to unlock your vehicle and disarm the alarm. The direction indicators flash. Do not touch the lock sensor on the top of the door handle.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

After unlocking the doors with the unlock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can lock your vehicle. When the delay period is over, you can lock the doors again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

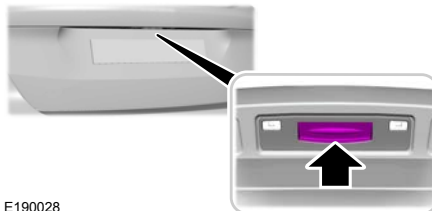
Unlocking the Driver Door

You can program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks when you touch the unlock sensor. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 67).

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, the following occurs:

- If you open the driver door first, all other doors remain locked. You can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control on the driver door. You can unlock individual doors by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
- If you open the front passenger door first, all of the other doors and the liftgate unlock.

Unlocking the Liftgate



E190028

Press the exterior release button hidden above the license plate.

Note: A valid passive key must be within the detection range.

Locking the Liftgate

The liftgate locks after you fully close it.

Smart Unlocks for Passive Keys

If you electronically lock your vehicle with a rear door or the liftgate open, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system detects a key, all doors unlock indicating that a key is inside.

Note: Your vehicle locks if another passive key is within the detection range after you close the last door.

Deactivated Passive Keys

The system deactivates passive keys left inside your vehicle when you lock it. You cannot switch the ignition on using a deactivated passive key. Press the unlock button on the remote control to reactivate a passive key.

Doors and Locks

Switching Keyless Entry On or Off

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Locks**.
4. Select **KeyFree**.

Liftgate

MANUAL LIFTGATE



WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



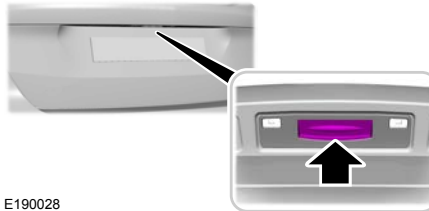
WARNING: Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open when you are driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Opening the Liftgate Using the Exterior Release Button



E190028

Press the exterior release button.

Opening the Liftgate Using the Remote Control



Press the button twice within three seconds.

Closing the Liftgate

A recessed grip or handle is inside the liftgate to help with closing.

Security

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

Principle of Operation

The system prevents someone from starting the engine with an incorrectly coded key.

Note: *Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

Coded Keys

If you lose a key, you can obtain a replacement from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original keys. You can also obtain extra keys from an authorized dealer.

Note: *Have all of your remaining keys erased and recoded if you lose a key. Have replacement keys coded together with recoding your remaining keys. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

Note: *Metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain may result in vehicle starting problems, especially if they are too close to the key when starting your vehicle.*

Arming the Engine Immobilizer

The engine immobilizer arms after a short period of time when you switch the ignition off.

Disarming the Engine Immobilizer

The engine immobilizer disarms when you switch the ignition on with a correctly coded key.

If you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: INTEGRAL BATTERY

Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood.

Interior Sensors

The interior sensors are in the overhead console.

When you lock your vehicle and arm the alarm, the sensors are designed to detect any movement inside your vehicle.

Note: *Do not cover the interior sensors.*

Inclination Sensors

When you lock your vehicle and arm the alarm, the sensors are designed to detect an attempt to raise your vehicle, for example to remove a wheel or to tow it away.

Battery Back-up Sounder (If Equipped)

The battery back-up sounder is an additional alarm component that has its own battery and sounds a siren if the vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder is disconnected. The system arms when you lock your vehicle and the ignition is off.

Triggering the Alarm

When armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If you switch your vehicle on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.

Security

- If the inclination sensors detect an attempt to raise your vehicle.
- If someone disconnects the vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the hazard flasher flashes for 5 minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above sounds the alarm again.

Full and Reduced Guard

Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Note: *Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.*

Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the inclination and interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 113).

Ask on Exit (If Equipped)

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set. See **General Information** (page 113).

Arming the Alarm

The alarm arms when you lock your vehicle and the ignition is off. See **Doors and Locks** (page 67).

Disarming the Alarm

Vehicles Without Keyless Entry

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching your vehicle on with a correctly coded key, or by unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Vehicles with Keyless Entry

Perimeter Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on, or by unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Note: *A valid passive key must be within the detection range of that door. See **Keyless Entry** (page 70).*

Category One Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on, or by unlocking the doors or the liftgate with the remote control.

Note: *A valid passive key must be within the detection range of that door. See **Keyless Entry** (page 70).*

ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood. If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds and the hazard flasher flashes.

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

Arming the Alarm

The alarm arms when you lock your vehicle. See **Doors and Locks** (page 67).

Disarming the Alarm

Vehicles Without Keyless Entry

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching your vehicle on with a correctly coded key, or by unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Vehicles With Keyless Entry

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on, or by unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Note: *A valid passive key must be within the detection range of that door. See **Keyless Entry** (page 70).*

Door Edge Protection (If Equipped)

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The front and rear doors have a retractable plastic door edge protector that moves into position when you open a door. The door edge protector protects the door edge from damage that could be caused by contact with other objects.

Do not attempt to move the door edge protector if it becomes stuck, or does not move freely. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *The door edge protector may be moved gently out of position when the door is open to allow access for cleaning. Make sure that the door edge protector is repositioned correctly otherwise it may not retract when you attempt to close the door.*

Note: *Keep the door edges free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Steering Wheel

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

WARNING: Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 142).



E95178

1. Unlock the steering column.

2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



E95179

3. Lock the steering column.

LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Remove the key from the ignition.

2. Slightly rotate the steering wheel to engage the lock.

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

WARNING: Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

1. Insert the key in the ignition.
2. Turn the key to position **I**.

Note: You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.

LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

The steering wheel lock locks shortly after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside it.

Note: The steering wheel lock does not lock when the ignition is on or when your vehicle is moving.

Steering Wheel

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel lock unlocks when the system detects a valid passive key inside your vehicle. If the steering wheel lock relocks, switch the ignition on to unlock it.

Note: *You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.*

HEATED STEERING WHEEL

The heated steering wheel button is on the climate controls.



Press the button to switch the heated steering wheel on and off.

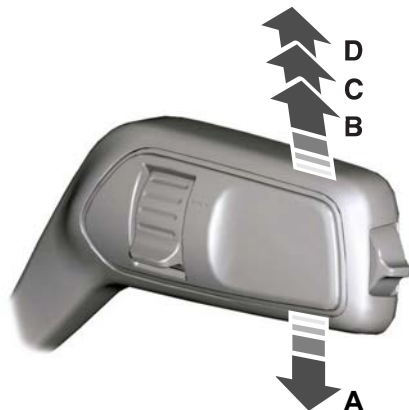
Note: *You can use the heated steering wheel only when the engine is running.*

Note: *The system uses a sensor and is designed to control the temperature of the steering wheel and to prevent it from overheating.*

Note: *In warm temperatures, the steering wheel quickly reaches its maximum temperature and the system reduces the current to the heating element. This could cause you to think that the system has stopped working but it has not. This is normal.*

Wipers and Washers

WINDSHIELD WIPERS



E248785

- A Single wipe.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Normal wipe.
- D High-speed wipe.

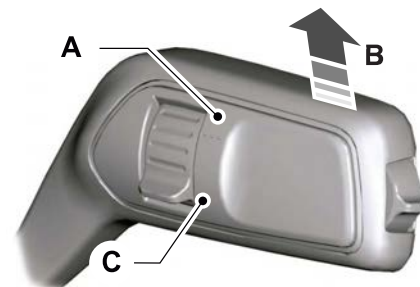
Note: Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

Note: Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

Note: If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 313). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Changing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 313).

Note: Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

Intermittent Wipe



E242320

- A Short wipe interval.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Long wipe interval.

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

Note: When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between intermittent wipes may decrease.

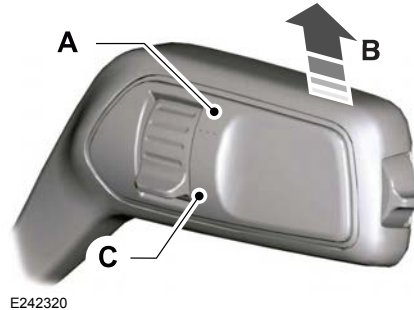
Wipers and Washers

AUTOWIPERS (IF EQUIPPED)

Autowipers uses a rain sensor in the area around the interior mirror. The wipers operate when the rain sensor detects water on the windshield in front of it. The rain sensor continues to monitor the amount of water and adjusts the speed of the wipers.

You can switch autowipers on or off in the information display.

Note: If you switch autowipers off in the information display, the windshield wipers operate in intermittent mode.



- A High sensitivity.
- B Autowipers on.
- C Low sensitivity.

Move the wiper lever upward to the first position to switch autowipers on.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the autowipers. When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield. When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

Note: Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

If you leave autowipers on, it may not operate when you switch the ignition on during freezing temperatures. This is because the system has deactivated the rain sensor to prevent damage to the windshield wipers. Defrost the windshield before reactivating the rain sensor. You can reactivate the rain sensor by moving the rotary control or switching autowipers off and on.

Note: Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

Note: Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

Wet or winter weather conditions could cause unexpected wiping or smearing.

To keep the windshield clear:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing on the windshield.
- Switch autowipers off.

Wipers and Washers

Note: *If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 313). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Changing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 313).*

Settings

To switch autowipers on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Vehicle settings	Press the OK button.
Wipers	Press the OK button.
Rain sensing	Press the OK button.

Wipers and Washers

WINDSHIELD WASHERS



E242323

Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washers. When you release the lever, the wipers operate for a short time. A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid.

You can switch courtesy wipe on or off in the information display.

Note: Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

Settings

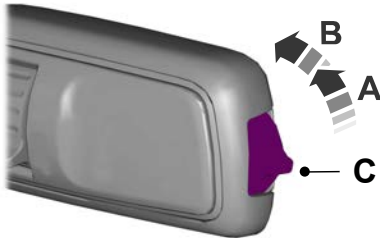
To switch courtesy wipe on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Vehicle settings	Press the OK button.
Wipers	Press the OK button.
Courtesy wipe	Press the OK button.

Wipers and Washers

REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS (IF EQUIPPED)

Rear Window Wiper



E242324

- A Intermittent wipe.
- B Continuous wipe.
- C Rear window wiper off.

The rear window wiper also turns on when you shift into reverse and the windshield wipers are on.

You can switch reverse wipe off in the information display.

Note: Make sure that you switch the rear window wiper off before entering a car wash.

Settings

To switch reverse wipe on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Vehicle settings	Press the OK button.
Wipers	Press the OK button.
Reverse wiper	Press the OK button.

Wipers and Washers

Rear Window Washer



E242432

Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer. When you release the lever, the wiper operates for a short time.

Note: *Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.*

Lighting

GENERAL INFORMATION

Condensation in the Exterior Front Lamps and Rear Lamps

Exterior front lamps and rear lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

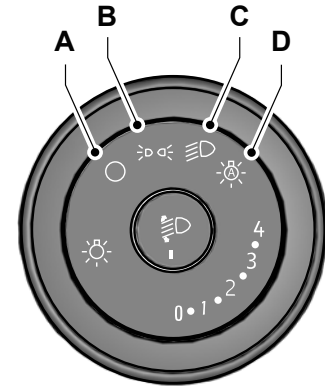
Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

LIGHTING CONTROL

Lighting Control Positions



- A Lamps off.
- B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps and license plate lamps.

Lighting

- C Headlamps.
- D Autolamps. See **Autolamps** (page 89).

Switching All of the Parking Lamps On

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps position.

Note: Parking lamps could turn off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

Switching the Left-Hand Side or the Right-Hand Side Parking Lamps On (If Equipped)

1. Switch the ignition off.



E242676

2. Push the lever up or down to switch the parking lamps on.

Note: Parking lamps could turn off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

Switching High Beam Headlamps On and Off



E248603

Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam headlamps on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beam headlamps off.

Note: If you switch the autolamps on, you cannot switch the high beam headlamps on until the system turns the headlamps on.

Lighting

Flashing High Beam Headlamps



E248604

Pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the high beam headlamps.

High Beam Headlamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.

Lamps On Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the side and rear lamps on.

Low Beam Headlamp Warning Lamp

(If Equipped)



If it illuminates when the low beam headlamps are on, this indicates that a low beam headlamp bulb has failed.

Exterior Lamps On Audible Warning

Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.

Headlamps Information Messages

Message	Description
Check adaptive headlamps See manual	Displays if an electrical malfunction occurs with the headlamp system. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

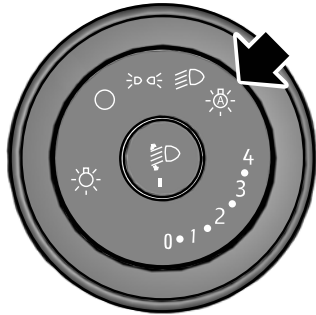
Lighting

AUTOLAMPS



WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the wipers operate.



Note: When you switch the autolamps on, the headlamps turn on within 10 seconds of switching the wipers on.

Note: If you switch the autolamps and the autowipers on, the headlamps turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.

Note: The headlamps turn off approximately 60 seconds after you switch the wipers off.

The headlamps remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Use the information display controls to adjust the period of time that the headlamps remain on.

Adjusting the Period of Time That the Headlamps Remain On

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Lighting**.
4. Select **Headlamp delay**.
5. Select a setting.
6. Press the **OK** button.

INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.



Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.





HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY


After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator toward you again or switching the ignition on.


Lighting

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

 **WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

 **WARNING:** You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.

 **WARNING:** You may need to override the system during inclement weather.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.



WARNING: The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.



WARNING: Inspect and replace the windshield wiper blades regularly to make sure the camera sensor has a clear view. The windshield wiper blades must be the correct length.

About Automatic High Beam Control

The system is designed to turn the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switched the system on in the information display.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that high beams are required.

- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

The system is designed to turn the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off in the information display.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.
- The ambient light level is high enough that high beams are not required.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or rear lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- Your vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

Lighting

Switching Automatic High Beam Control On or Off

To switch the system on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Vehicle settings	Press the OK button.
Lighting	Press the OK button.
Auto highbeam	Press the OK button.

Automatic High Beam Indicator



It illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

Overriding Automatic High Beam Control

Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

Automatic High Beam Control Information Messages

Message	Description
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Lighting

FRONT FOG LAMPS

Switching the Front Fog Lamps On or Off

Only switch the front fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

You can switch the front fog lamps on if any of the following occur:

- You set the lighting control to the parking lamps position.
- You set the lighting control to the headlamps position.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position and the headlamps are on.

The front fog lamp button is on the lighting control.



Press the button to switch the front fog lamps on or off.

Note: The brightness of the daytime running lamps may decrease when the front fog lamps are switched on.

Front Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

REAR FOG LAMPS

Switching the Rear Fog Lamps On or Off



WARNING: Do not use the rear fog lamps when it is raining or snowing and visibility is more than 50 m (164.0 ft).

You can switch the rear fog lamps on if any of the following occur:

- You switched the front fog lamps on.
- You set the lighting control to the headlamps position.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position and the headlamps are on.

The rear fog lamp button is on the lighting control.



Press the button to switch the rear fog lamps on or off.

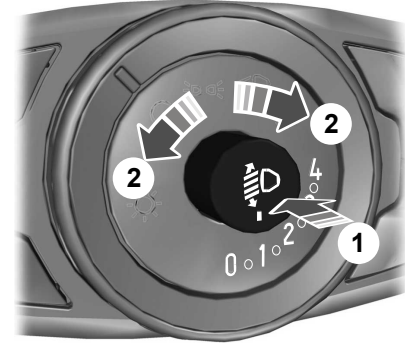
Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

HEADLAMP LEVELING

To adjust the level of the headlamp beams, do the following:



E132711

1. Press to release the control.
2. Rotate the control in accordance with your vehicle load to prevent you from distracting other road users when the headlamps are on.

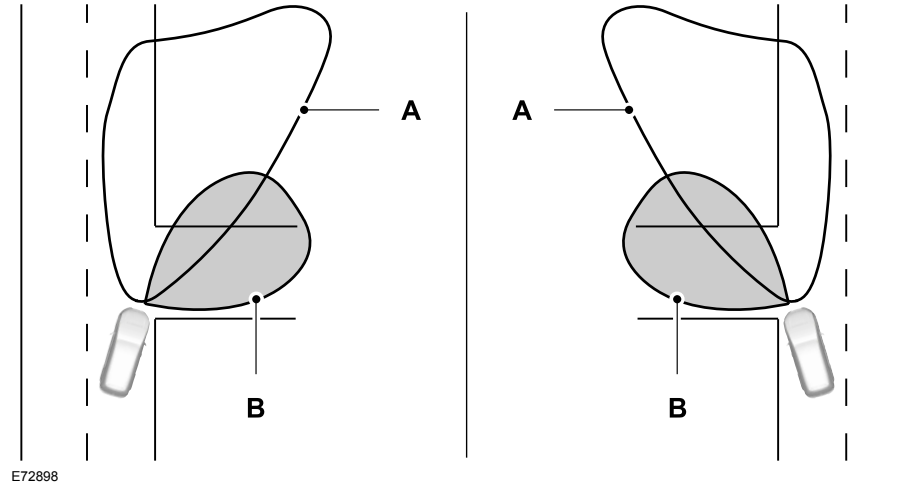
Note: Set the control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded.

Lighting

Note: Set the headlamp beams to give between 35–100 m (115–328 ft) of road surface illumination when your vehicle is partially or fully loaded.

3. Press to close the control.

CORNERING LAMPS



Lighting

- A Headlamp beam.
- B Cornering lamp beam.

The cornering lamps illuminate the inside of a corner when you are turning the steering wheel.

DIRECTION INDICATORS



E242676

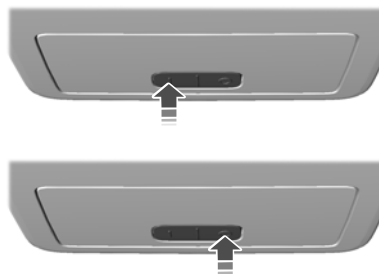


Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

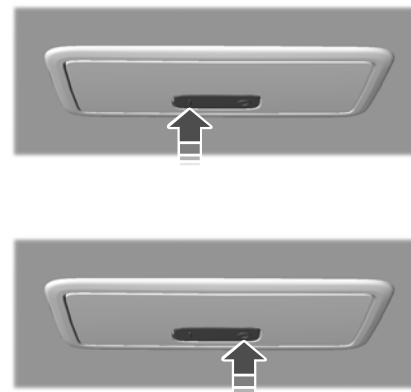
Note: Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times.

INTERIOR LAMPS - VEHICLES WITH: FRONT INTERIOR LAMP

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off

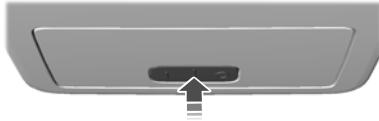


Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off



Lighting

Interior Lamp Function



When you set the switch to the middle position, the interior lamps turn on if:

- You open a door.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch the ignition off.

Note: If you switch the ignition off, the interior lamps could turn off after a short time to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

INTERIOR LAMPS - VEHICLES WITH: FRONT INTERIOR LAMP WITH MAP READING LAMPS

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off



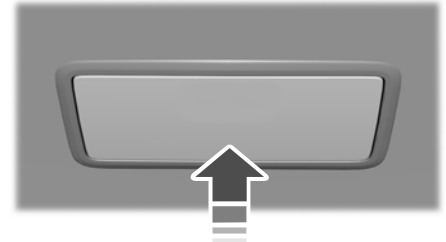
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off



E249791

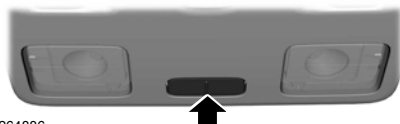
Note: Press the edge of the lamps lens to switch the front interior lamp off before switching the ignition off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off



E250958

Interior Lamp Function



E264886

When you set the switch to the middle position, the interior lamps turn on if:

- You open a door.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch the ignition off.

Note: *If you switch the ignition off, the interior lamps could turn off after a short time to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.*

Windows

OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS



WARNING: Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



Press the control to open the window. Lift the control to close the window.

Note: *The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.*

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

One-Touch Open

Fully press the control and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Close

Fully lift the control and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Resetting One-Touch Close

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Close the window.
2. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open. Keep the switch pressed for a few seconds.
3. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the switch held for a few seconds.
4. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open. Keep the switch pressed for a few seconds.
5. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the switch held for a few seconds.

Note: *Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.*

GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

What Is Global Opening and Closing

You can use the remote control to operate the windows with the ignition off.

Using Global Opening

1. Press and release the unlock button on the remote control.
2. Press and hold the unlock button on the remote control.
3. Release the button when the windows and moonroof start to open.

Note: *The moonroof stops in the vent position.*

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global opening.

Note: *You can use global opening for a short period of time when you unlock your vehicle using the remote control.*

Switching Global Opening On and Off

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.

Windows

3. Select **Windows**.
4. Switch **Global open** on or off.

Using Global Closing



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

1. Press and hold the lock button on the remote control.
2. Release the button when the windows and moonroof start to close.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global closing.

Note: *Bounce-back is on during global closing. See **What Is Window Bounce-Back** (page 98).*

Switching Global Closing On and Off

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Windows**.

4. Switch **Global close** on or off.

WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

What Is Window Bounce-Back

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction when closing.

Overriding Window Bounce-Back



WARNING: If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Lift the control within five seconds to override bounce-back and close the window. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually.

Note: *The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.*

Note: *If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

Resetting Window Bounce-Back



WARNING: Bounce-back is off until you reset the memory. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Close the window.
2. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open. Keep the switch pressed for a few seconds.
3. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the switch held for a few seconds.
4. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open. Keep the switch pressed for a few seconds.
5. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the switch held for a few seconds.

Note: *Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.*

Windows

LOCKING THE REAR WINDOW CONTROLS



Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It illuminates when you lock the rear window controls.

Interior Mirror

ADJUSTING THE INTERIOR MIRROR



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce the effect of bright light from behind.

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

What Is the Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or if you shift into reverse (R).

Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror Precautions



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

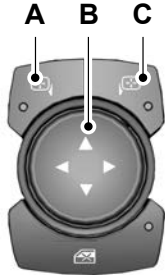
Note: *A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.*

Exterior Mirrors

ADJUSTING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



E250105

- A Left-hand mirror switch.
- B Mirror adjustment control.
- C Right-hand mirror switch.

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Push the mirror toward the door window glass.

Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: POWER FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS

The exterior mirrors fold when you lock your vehicle and unfold when you unlock your vehicle.



For tight parking conditions, press the control to fold the mirrors.

Press the control again to unfold the mirrors.

If you press the control to fold in the mirrors with auto-fold on, the mirrors do not unfold when you unlock your vehicle.

Note: The power folding mirrors operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Note: If you fold and unfold the mirrors several times within one minute, the power fold function may turn off to protect the motors from overheating.

Switching Auto-fold On and Off

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Mirrors**.
4. Switch **Autofold** on or off.


Moonroof

OPENING AND CLOSING THE SUN SHADE

The sun shade operates independently of the moonroof. Slide the sun shade backward or forward to open or close it.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE MOONROOF

Opening the Moonroof

 **WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The moonroof controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch open.


To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, touch the control a second time.




Press and release the rear of the control to vent the moonroof.

Press and release the rear of the control again to open the moonroof.

Closing the Moonroof

 **WARNING:** When closing the moonroof, verify that it is free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.

 **WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.


The moonroof controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch close.

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, touch the control a second time.



Press and release the front of the control.

VENTING THE MOONROOF

 **WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



Press and release the rear of the control to vent the moonroof.

Press and release the front of the control to close the moonroof.

MOONROOF BOUNCE-BACK

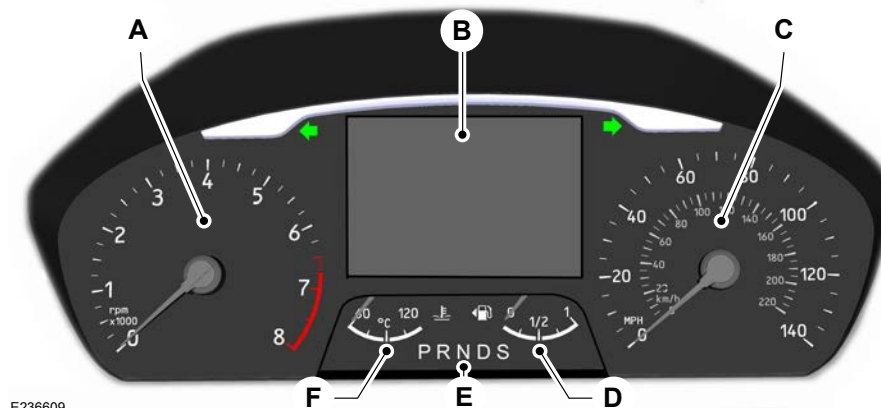
The moonroof stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction.



Press and hold the front of the control within a few seconds to override bounce-back.

Instrument Cluster

GAUGES - EXCLUDING: MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)



- A Tachometer.
- B Information display.
- C Speedometer.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Automatic transmission gearshift lever position indicator.
- F Engine coolant temperature gauge.

Instrument Cluster

Tachometer

Shows the engine speed. The discontinuous red line indicates the standard maximum engine speed. The red line thickens where the engine speed enters the overspeed limiter.

Information Display

The information display shows the following information:

- Odometer.
- Trip odometer.
- MyView information.
- Driver assistance information.
- Navigation information.
- Audio information.
- Phone information.
- Shift indicator.
- Vehicle and system settings.
- Outside air temperature.

Odometer

Records the total distance traveled by your vehicle.

The system detects unauthorized odometer adjustments to avoid total distance reading fraud. If the system detects an unauthorized odometer adjustment, the total distance reading displays XXXX. Recovery of the original mileage could result in system damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty and may carry a significant expense.

Trip Computer

See **Trip Computer** (page 114).

Vehicle and System Settings

See **General Information** (page 113).

Speedometer

Shows the vehicle speed.

Fuel Gauge

The fuel gauge indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.



A



B

E236403

- A The fuel filler door is on the left-hand side of your vehicle.
- B The fuel filler door is on the right-hand side of your vehicle.

Automatic Transmission Gearshift Lever Position Indicator (If Equipped)

Shows the selected gear. See **Gauges** (page 103).

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

At normal operating temperature, the needle remains in the center section.

Instrument Cluster

If the needle enters the red section a warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the information display. If you continue to operate the engine at high engine speeds with the needle in the red section, the engine

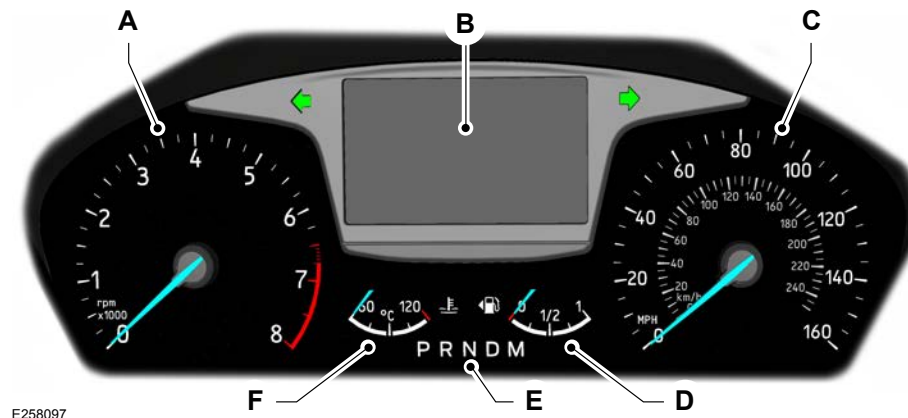
speed reduces automatically to prevent engine damage.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool.

Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been determined and resolved.

GAUGES - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

Instrument Cluster



E258097

Instrument Cluster

- A Tachometer.
- B Information display.
- C Speedometer.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Automatic transmission position indicators.
- F Engine coolant temperature gauge.

Tachometer

Shows the engine speed. The red line thickens where the engine speed enters the overspeed limiter.

Information Display

Shows the following information:

- Odometer.
- Trip computer.
- MyView information.
- Driver assistance information.
- Navigation information.
- Audio information.
- Phone information.
- Vehicle and system settings.

- Outside air temperature.
- Shift indicators.

Odometer

Records the total distance traveled by your vehicle.

The system detects unauthorized odometer adjustments to avoid total distance reading fraud. If the system detects an unauthorized odometer adjustment, the total distance reading displays XXXX. Recovery of the original mileage could result in system damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty and may carry a significant expense.

Trip Computer

See **Trip Computer** (page 114).

Vehicle and System Settings

See **General Information** (page 113).

Shift Indicator

See **Manual Transmission Shift Indicators** (page 189).

Speedometer

Shows the vehicle speed.

Fuel Gauge

The fuel gauge indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

Instrument Cluster



A



B

E236403

- A The fuel filler door is on the left-hand side of your vehicle.
- B The fuel filler door is on the right-hand side of your vehicle.

Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If the fuel gauge icon illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

Low Fuel Level Audible Warning

For MyKey users, a warning tone sounds and a message appears in the information display when the distance to empty reaches 120 km (75 mi).

For all keys, a warning tone sounds and a message appears in the information display when the distance to empty reaches 80 km (50 mi). A warning tone sounds and a message appears in the information display again at the following distance to empty parameters:

- 40 km (20 mi)
- 20 km (10 mi)
- 0 km (0 mi)

Note: The low fuel reminder appears at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

At normal operating temperature, the needle remains in the center section. If the needle enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool.

Note: The system reduces the engine speed if you continue to operate the engine at a high engine speed.

Note: Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been determined and resolved.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp



The engine coolant temperature gauge icon illuminates if the systems detect a malfunction.

Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Automatic Transmission Gearshift Lever Position Indicator

Shows the selected gear. See **Automatic Transmission Position Indicators** (page 191).

Hybrid Gauge

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **MyView**.
2. Select **Hybrid gauge**.

Note: If you select any other screen than the hybrid gauge then the current status indicator of the hybrid system appears in the information display.



Illuminates in the information display when the mild hybrid system is charging the battery.

Instrument Cluster



Illuminates in the information display when the battery is assisting the powertrain in driving the vehicle.



Illuminates in the information display when the battery is providing a large amount of energy to the powertrain to support a higher rate of acceleration.



Illuminates in the information display when the mild hybrid system cannot provide energy to the powertrain.

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

Note: Some warning indicators appear in the information display and operate the same as a warning lamp but do not illuminate when you start your vehicle.

Airbag Warning Lamp



If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Automatic Headlamp High Beam Indicator (If Equipped)



If it illuminates when the system turns the headlamp high beam on.

See **Automatic High Beam Control** (page 90).

Auto-Start-Stop Indicator



It illuminates green when the engine has automatically stopped. It flashes to inform you when the engine needs to restart.

Note: If it illuminates orange, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



The indicator is shown with a strikethrough if the system is not available.

See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 168). See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 170).

Blind Spot Information System Indicator (If Equipped)



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 244).

Instrument Cluster

Brake System Warning Lamp



WARNING: Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Collision Warning System Indicator

(If Equipped)



It illuminates if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

It illuminates red if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.

See **Pre-Collision Assist** (page 254).

Cruise Control Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

See **Cruise Control** (page 212).

Direction Indicator



Flashes when you switch the direction indicators on.

Note: *An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed indicator bulb.*

Door Ajar Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, this indicates that the engine is overheating. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Engine Warning Lamps



Service Engine Soon

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

If it flashes when you are driving, reduce the speed of your vehicle immediately. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.



Malfunction Indicator Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

Instrument Cluster

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp



It illuminates and a chime sounds until you fasten the seatbelts.

Front Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

Frost Warning Lamp



WARNING: Even if the temperature rises to above 4°C (39°F) there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.



It illuminates when the outside air temperature is 4°C (39°F) or below.

Glow Plug Indicator



If it illuminates, wait until it turns off before starting.

Hazard Flasher Indicator



Flashes when you switch the hazard flashers on.

Headlamp High Beam Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the headlamp high beam on. It illuminates when the system turns the headlamp high beam on.

Headlamp Low Beam Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when the low beam headlamps are on, this indicates that a headlamp low beam bulb has failed.

Ignition Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on.

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Lamps on Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the headlamp low beam or the side and rear lamps on.

Launch Control Indicator (If Equipped)



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

Lane Keeping Alert Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

Lane Keeping Aid Warning Lamp (If Equipped)



It illuminates when you switch the system on. See **Lane Keeping System** (page 240).

Instrument Cluster

Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp (If Equipped)



It illuminates if the tire pressure in one or more tires is below the correct tire pressure.

See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 334).

Oil Pressure Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on.

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. If the oil level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

See **Engine Oil Check** (page 307).

Over Speed Warning Indicator (If Equipped)



It illuminates when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h (75 mph).

Performance Shift Indicator (If Equipped)



It illuminates when the powertrain reaches the optimum upshift point. It flashes when the engine is close to hitting the engine speed limiter.

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

Shift Indicator



It illuminates to advise you that shifting to a higher or lower gear may give better performance, fuel economy or lower emissions.



Stability Control and Traction Control Indicator



Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *The system automatically turns off if there is a malfunction.*

See **Stability Control** (page 199). See **Traction Control** (page 198).

Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

See **Stability Control** (page 199).

AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

Airbag Secondary Warning

Sounds when the airbag warning lamp is not working. Sounds when the airbag warning lamp malfunction tone is not working.

Instrument Cluster

Auto-Start-Stop Warning

Sounds when you open the driver door and Auto-Start-Stop has turned the engine off.

Automatic Transmission

Sounds when you open the driver door and the transmission is not in park (P).

Door Ajar

Sounds when a door is not fully closed and your vehicle is moving.

Exterior Lamps On

Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.

Low Fuel Reminder

Sounds when the fuel level is low.

Key Outside Vehicle

Sounds when you remove the passive key from your vehicle and the engine is running.

Over Speed Warning

Sounds when your vehicle speed exceeds a set limit.

Parking Brake On

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving.

Seatbelt Reminder

Sounds when a seatbelt is unfastened in an occupied seat and your vehicle is moving.

Information Displays

GENERAL INFORMATION



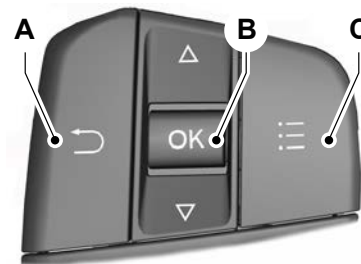
WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: For your safety, some features are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle speed is not moving.

Information Display Controls



E236983



E250032

- A Return button.
- B OK button.
- C Menu button.

Return Button

Use the return button to go back or to exit.

OK Button

Use the **OK** button to make a selection. You can also use it to scroll through a menu.

Menu Button

Use the menu button on the main screen to display the submenu.

Information Displays

Information Display Main Menu

Menu Item
<i>Trip computer 1</i> or <i>Trip computer 2</i>
MyView
Driver assist.

Menu Item
Navigation
Audio
Phone
Settings

TRIP COMPUTER

You can reset the trip computer and personalize it using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 113).

Resetting the Trip Computer

Navigate to the following main menu item.

Menu Item	Action
Trip computer 1	Press and hold the OK button until the system reset confirmation appears.
Trip computer 2	Press and hold the OK button until the system reset confirmation appears.

Alternatively you can reset individual trip values.

Menu Item	Action
Trip computer 1	Press the menu button.
Trip computer 2	Press the menu button.
Reset individual values	Press the OK button.
Reset trip odometer	Press and hold the OK button until the system reset confirmation appears.

Information Displays

Menu Item	Action
Reset trip timer	Press and hold the OK button until the system reset confirmation appears.
Reset average fuel	Press and hold the OK button until the system reset confirmation appears.
Reset average speed	Press and hold the OK button until the system reset confirmation appears.

Personalization

Navigate to the following main menu item.

Menu Item	Action
Trip computer 1	Press the menu button.
Trip computer 2	Press the menu button.
Configure view	Press the OK button.
Trip odometer	Press the OK button.
Trip timer	Press the OK button.
Average fuel consumption	Press the OK button.
Average speed	Press the OK button.
Distance to empty	Press the OK button.
Instantaneous fuel	Press the OK button.

Note: *You can display a maximum of four values.*

Information Displays

Trip Odometer

Registers the total distance since you last reset the value.

Trip Timer

Registers the total time since you last reset the value.

Average Fuel

Indicates the average fuel consumption since you last reset the value.

Average Speed

Indicates the average vehicle speed since you last reset the value.

Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle could travel on the fuel remaining in the fuel tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.

Instantaneous Fuel

Indicates the current fuel consumption.

PERSONALIZED SETTINGS

Language

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Display	Press the OK button.
Language	Press the OK button. Choose your applicable setting.

Information Displays

Measure Unit

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Display	Press the OK button.
Measurement unit	Press the OK button. Choose your applicable setting.

Temperature Unit

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Display	Press the OK button.
Temperature unit	Press the OK button. Choose your applicable setting.

Tire Pressure Unit (If Equipped)

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Display	Press the OK button.
Tyre pressure	Press the OK button. Choose your applicable setting.

Information Displays

Chimes

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Vehicle settings	Press the OK button.
Chimes	Press the OK button.
Parking space found	Press the OK button.
Information	Press the OK button.

INFORMATION MESSAGES

Active Park Assist

Message	Description
Active Park malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Information Displays

Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Description
Adaptive cruise control malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Adaptive cruise control not available	The system is not available. See Using Adaptive Cruise Control (page 213).
Adaptive cruise control not available Sensor blocked See manual	The radar has reduced visibility. See Using Adaptive Cruise Control (page 213).
Cruise control active Adaptive braking off	You have switched normal cruise control on. Adaptive braking turns off.
Front sensor not aligned	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Adaptive cruise control Driver resume control	The adaptive cruise has reinstated controls to the driver.
Adaptive cruise control Speed too low to activate	Your vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise.
Adaptive cruise control Speed sign recognition not available	Navigation system based speed limit information is not available. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Alarm

Message	Description
Vehicle alarm Start vehicle to stop alarm	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry.

Information Displays

Automatic High Beam Control

Message	Description
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Auto-Start-Stop

Message	Description
Auto StartStop Press Brake to Start Engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Press clutch to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. Press the clutch pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Press a Pedal to Start Engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. Press any pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Select Neutral To Start Engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. Shift into neutral (N) to restart the engine.

Information Displays

Message	Description
Auto StartStop Shift to P, then Restart Engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. Shift into park (P) to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Manual Restart Required	The system is not functioning. Restart the engine.
Auto StartStop malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert Systems

Message	Description
BLIS malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
BLIS not available Sensor blocked See manual	The system sensors are blocked. See Blind Spot Information System (page 244).
BLIS deactivated Trailer attached	You have attached a trailer to your vehicle. The system turns off.
Vehicle coming from left Vehicle coming from right	The system detects a vehicle. See Blind Spot Information System (page 244).
Cross traffic alert	Displays instead of indication arrows when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic.
Cross traffic malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Information Displays

Message	Description
Cross traffic not available Sensor blocked See manual	The system sensors are blocked. See Cross Traffic Alert (page 246).
Cross traffic alert deactivated Trailer attached	You have attached a trailer to your vehicle. The system turns off.
Cross traffic alert Applying brakes	The system applies the brakes. Check for approaching traffic.

Brake System

Message	Description
Check brake system	The system has malfunctioned. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Information Displays

Doors and Locks

Message	Description
Driver door open Passenger door open Rear left door open Rear right door open Liftgate open	The door listed is not completely closed.
Bonnet open	The hood is not completely closed.
Switches inhibited Security mode	The system has disabled the door switches.

Driver Alert

Message	Description
Driver fatigue warning Rest now	Take a break due to low alertness levels.
Driver fatigue warning Rest suggested	We recommend that you take a break due to low alertness levels.

Information Displays

Engine

Message	Description
Engine coolant overtemperature	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Fuel System

Message	Description
Fuel level low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition.
Fuel level low distance metric:##0 km to empty	
Fuel level low distance imperial:##0 miles to empty	
Check fuel fill inlet	The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.
Fuel pressure low	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Water in fuel Drain filter	The system detects there is excess water in the fuel filter. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Information Displays

Headlamps

Message	Description
Check adaptive headlamps See manual	Displays if an electrical malfunction occurs with the headlamp system. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Hill Start Assist

Message	Description
Hill start assist not available	The system is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See Hill Start Assist (page 196).

Lane Keeping System

Message	Description
Lane keeping system malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Information Displays

Maintenance

Message	Description
Engine oil level low Add oil	The engine oil level is low. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See Engine Oil Check (page 307). If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Engine oil pressure low	The engine oil pressure is low. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See Engine Oil Check (page 307). If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Change engine oil soon	The engine oil life remaining is 10% or less. See Engine Oil Check (page 307).
Oil change required	The oil life left is at 0%. See Engine Oil Check (page 307).
Brake fluid level low	The brake fluid level is low or the brake system has malfunctioned. See Brake Fluid Check (page 310). Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Power reduced to lower engine temperature	The engine has reduced power to help reduce high engine temperature.
Transport mode Contact dealer	Transport mode is on. This may not allow some features to properly operate. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Factory mode Contact dealer	Factory mode is on. This may not allow some features to properly operate. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Information Displays

MyKey

Message	Description
Place key in backup location	Displays when trying to create a MyKey and the key is not placed in the backup position. See Passive Key Backup Position (page 58).
Key is already a MyKey	Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.
Hold OK to create MyKey	Displays when creating a MyKey.
Creation completed	Displays to confirm that a MyKey has been created.
Key restricted at next start. Label this key	Displays to confirm that the key is restricted after you switch the ignition off.
MyKey not created	Displays if the system fails to create a MyKey.
Hold OK to clear MyKeys	Displays when clearing all MyKeys.
All MyKeys cleared	Displays to confirm that all MyKeys have been cleared.

Information Displays

Parking Aid

Message	Description
Parking aid malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check Park Pilot	
Check front Park Pilot	
Check rear Park Pilot	The system sensors are blocked. See Parking Aids (page 200).
Park Pilot not available sensor blocked See Manual	
Front Park Pilot not available sensor blocked See Manual	
Rear Park Pilot not available Sensor blocked See manual	You have attached a bike rack, trailer or other object near the sensors on the front or rear of your vehicle.
Rear Park Pilot disabled Trailer attached	

Parking Brake

Message	Description
Park brake applied	You have not released the parking brake and your vehicle reaches 5 km/h (3 mph). If the message continues to appear after you have released the parking brake, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Information Displays

Pre-Collision Assist

Message	Description
Pre-collision assist not available	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Pre-collision assist not available Sensor blocked	The system sensors are blocked. See Pre-Collision Assist (page 254).

Rear Window Lock

Message	Description
Child lock malfunction See manual	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Remote Control

Message	Description
Key battery low Replace soon	The key battery is low. Change the battery as soon as possible.

Seatbelt Reminder

Message	Description
Rear belt monitor malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Information Displays

Selectable Drive Modes

Message	Description
Drive mode not available	The system is not available. If it is still not available the next time you switch the ignition on, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Stability Control

Message	Description
ESC Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Starting System

Message	Description
Full accessory power active	Displays if you switch the ignition on and do not start the engine.
Press brake to start	A reminder to press the brake pedal when starting your vehicle.
Press clutch to start	A reminder to press the clutch pedal when starting your vehicle.
Press brake and clutch to start	A reminder to press the brake and clutch pedals when starting your vehicle.
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if your vehicle fails to start.

Information Displays

Message	Description
No key detected	The system does not detect a valid passive key inside your vehicle.
Starting system malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Restart now or key is needed	Displays if you switch the engine off and the system does not detect a valid passive key inside your vehicle.

Steering System

Message	Description
Steering loss Stop safely	The system has malfunctioned. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering malfunction Service now	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering assist malfunction Service required	
Steering Lock Malfunction Service Now	

Information Displays

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Description
Tyre pressure low	One or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure.
Tyre pressure monitor malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tyre pressure sensor malfunction	The system has malfunctioned or the spare tire is in use. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Transmission

Message	Description
Transmission malfunction Service now Transmission Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission overtemperature Stop safely Transmission overheating Stop safely Transmission too hot Press brake	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow the transmission to cool. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission limited function See manual	The transmission has limited functionality. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission warming up Please wait	Displays at low outside temperatures, if it takes a few seconds for the transmission to engage a gear. Fully press the brake pedal until the message disappears from the information display.

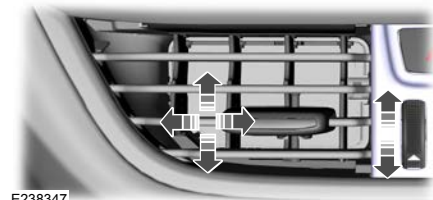
Information Displays

Message	Description
Transmission not in Park	Displays as a reminder to shift into park (P).
Press brake to unlock selector lever	Press the brake pedal to unlock the transmission.
Selector lever unlocked	Displays when the selector lever unlocks.

Climate Control

AIR VENTS

Center Air Vents



Side Air Vents



MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL

Switching the Climate Control On and Off



Switching the Recirculated Air On and Off



Note: The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates.

Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off



Note: Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off



Turn the temperature control clockwise past the highest setting to maximize defrosting.

Note: The temperature control springs back to the highest setting.

Note: When you switch maximum defrost on, the heated windshield, heated rear window and air conditioning turn on. The blower motor is set to the highest speed.

Climate Control

Note: When you switch maximum defrost off, the heated windshield and heated rear window remain on.

Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off

MAX A/C Turn the temperature control counterclockwise past the lowest setting to maximize cooling.

Note: The temperature control springs back to the lowest setting.

Note: When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

Setting the Blower Motor Speed



Note: Lights on the control illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.

Note: When you switch the blower motor off, air conditioning turns off and the windows could fog up.

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



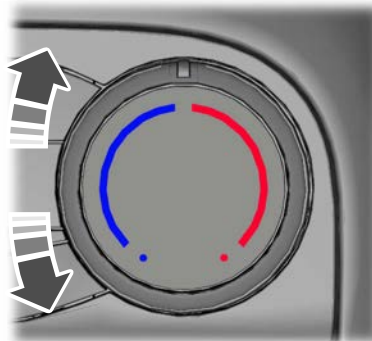
Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Setting the Temperature



Turn the temperature control counterclockwise for cooler temperature settings.

Turn the temperature control clockwise for warmer temperature settings.

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL

Switching the Climate Control On and Off



Switching the Recirculated Air On and Off



Note: The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates.

Note: Recirculated air could turn off or be prevented from turning on in all air flow modes except maximum cooling to reduce the risk of the windows fogging up. It could also turn on and off when you direct air to the instrument panel or footwell air vents during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.

Climate Control

Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off



Note: Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off



Note: When you switch maximum defrost on, the heated windshield, heated rear window and air conditioning turn on. The blower motor is set to the highest speed.

Note: When you switch maximum defrost off, the heated windshield and heated rear window remain on.

Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off



Note: When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

Switching Auto Mode On and Off



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

Note: When you switch auto mode on, lights on the blower motor control do not illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

Climate Control

Auto Mode Indicator Status

Auto Mode Indicator Status	Description
One indicator illuminated.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The blower motor speed is reduced.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor.• This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.
Two indicators illuminated.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The blower motor speed is moderate.
Three indicators illuminated.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The blower motor speed is increased.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior.• This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.

Setting the Blower Motor Speed



Note: Lights on the control illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents

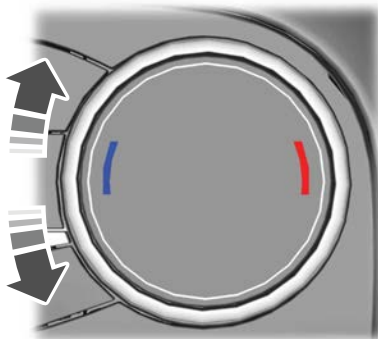


Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Climate Control

Setting the Temperature



Turn the temperature control counterclockwise for cooler temperature settings.

Turn the temperature control clockwise for warmer temperature settings.

Note: You can adjust the temperature between 15.5–29.5°C (60–85°F).

HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE - VEHICLES WITH: AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL

General Hints

Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with directing air to the rear seats.

Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

Note: You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

Note: To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

Note: Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

Note: Use air conditioning with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

Note: When you select automatic mode and the outside temperature is low and the engine is cold, air is directed to the windshield and the outer instrument panel air vents.

Note: When you select automatic mode and the outside temperature and in-vehicle temperature is high, the system temporarily selects recirculated air to maximize cooling.

Note: When you select maximum defrost, air conditioning turns on and air is directed to the windshield air vents.

Recommended Settings for Heating

- Press **AUTO**.
- Select the required temperature.

Note: Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. The system automatically adjusts to heat or cool the interior to your selected temperature as quickly as possible. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

- Press **MAX A/C**.

Note: To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Climate Control

Recommended Settings for Cooling

- Press **AUTO**.
- Select the required temperature.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

- Select maximum defrost.

Defogging or Clearing the Windshield of Thin Ice

- Select maximum defrost.

HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL TEMPERATURE CONTROL

General Hints

Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with directing air to the rear seats.

Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

Note: You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

Note: To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

Note: To reduce fogging of the windshield during humid weather conditions, direct air to the windshield air vents.

Note: Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

Note: Use air conditioning with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

Quickly Heating the Interior

- Select the highest blower motor speed.
- Select the highest temperature.
- Direct air to the footwell air vents.

Recommended Settings for Heating

- Select a medium blower motor speed.
- Select the required temperature.
- Direct air to the footwell and windshield air vents.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

- Select maximum cooling.

Note: To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

- Select a medium blower motor speed.
- Select the required temperature.
- Direct air to the instrument panel air vents.
- Press A/C.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

- Select maximum defrost.

Defogging or Clearing the Windshield of Thin Ice

- Select maximum defrost.

HEATED WINDSHIELD



Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Make sure that the engine is running before switching the heated windshield on.

Climate Control

Note: The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.

HEATED REAR WINDOW - VEHICLES WITH: AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Make sure the engine is on before operating the heated windows.

Note: Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage to the heated rear window grid lines.

HEATED REAR WINDOW - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL TEMPERATURE CONTROL



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Make sure the engine is on before operating the heated windows.

Note: Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle Warranty may not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.

HEATED EXTERIOR MIRRORS

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on.

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

REMOTE START

About Remote Start

The system allows you to remotely start the engine using the FordPass app.

The system can also adjust the interior temperature according to the settings that you chose.

Note: All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the engine.

Note: The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started the engine. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and drive your vehicle.

Remote Start Limitations

Remote start does not work if:

- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).

Enabling Remote Start

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Switch **System** on or off.

Note: To use remote start, make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 387).

Climate Control

Remotely Starting the Engine



WARNING: To avoid exhaust fumes, do not use remote start if your vehicle is parked indoors or in areas that are not well ventilated.

Use the FordPass app to start the engine.

Note: The direction indicators flash twice.

Note: The parking lamps turn on when the engine is running.

Note: The horn sounds if the system fails to start.

Note: You must switch on the ignition before driving your vehicle.

Remotely Stopping the Engine

Use the FordPass app to stop the engine.

Remote Start Settings

Use the information display to adjust the remote start settings.

Note: You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the engine.

Note: When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.

Switching Auto On

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Select **Climate control**.
5. Switch **Auto** on.

Note: If you switch **Auto** on, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C (72°F).

Note: The heated windshield, heated rear window, heated mirrors, heated seats and heated steering wheel could turn on in cold weather.

Switching Last settings On

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Select **Climate control**.
5. Switch **Last settings** on.

Note: If you switch **Last settings** on, the system remembers the last used settings.

Switching the Heated Seats and the Heated Steering Wheel Settings On

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Select **Seats and steering**.
5. Switch **Auto** on.

Note: If you switch the heated seats and the heated steering wheel settings on, the heated seats and heated steering wheel turn on during cold weather.

Setting the Duration

You can set a duration for the engine to run.

Note: Wait a few seconds before remotely starting the engine after the engine stops running.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Select **Duration**.

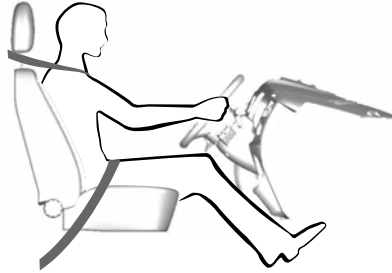
Seats

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

WARNING: Do not recline the seatback too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a collision.

WARNING: Always sit upright against your seatback with your feet on the floor.

WARNING: Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30° from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.

- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm (10 in) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

HEAD RESTRAINTS

WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: Raise the rear head restraints when passengers occupy the rear seats.

Seats



WARNING: Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

Adjusting the Head Restraints

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

Raising the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Make sure the head restraint locks into place.

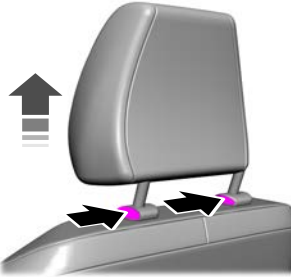
Lowering the Head Restraints

1. Press the left-hand side locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.
3. Make sure the head restraint locks into place.

Removing the Head Restraints

Front Head Restraints

1. Recline the seat backrest so that there is enough room for you to remove the head restraint.

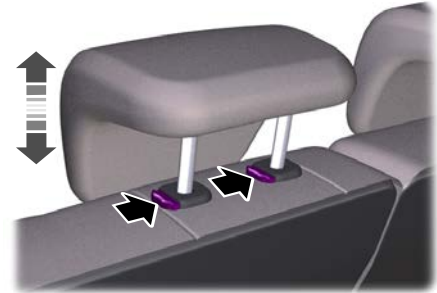


E251772

2. Press the locking buttons together.
3. Lift and remove the head restraint.

Rear Head Restraints

1. Fold the seat backrest forward so that there is enough room for you to remove the head restraint.



E135401

2. Press the locking buttons together.
3. Lift and remove the head restraint.

MANUAL SEATS - 3-DOOR



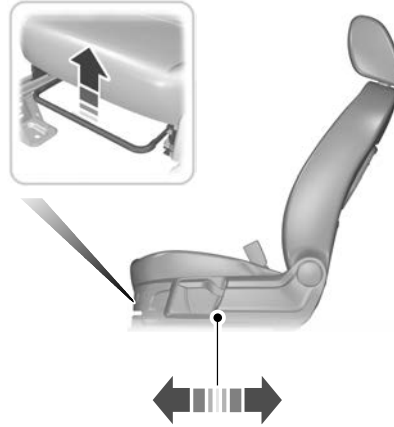
WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat when your vehicle is moving.

Seats

WARNING: Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seat backrest before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seat backrest to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seat backrest to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a crash.

Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

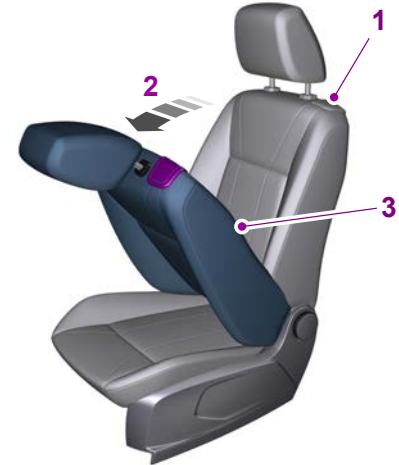
WARNING: Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.



E147926

Note: Do not move the seat backward and forward using the lever underneath the seat base unless the seat backrest is upright.

Folding the Seat Backrest Forward



E159979

1. Pull the lever to release the seat backrest.

Note: Do not hold onto the lever when moving the seat.

2. Fold the seat backrest fully forward.

3. Slide the seat forward.

Seats

Returning the Seat Backrest to the Seating Position



E159980

1. Push the seat backrest to slide the tilted seat to the end stop (memory position) or desired seating position.
2. Fold the seat backrest to the upright position.

Note: Make sure the seat base has been moved to the correct position before folding the seat backrest upright.

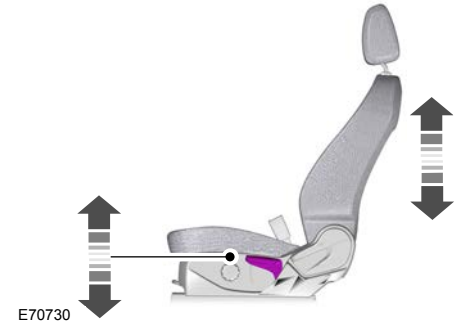
Note: You do not need to pull the lever when unfolding the seat backrest.

Adjusting the Lumbar Support (If Equipped)



E249179

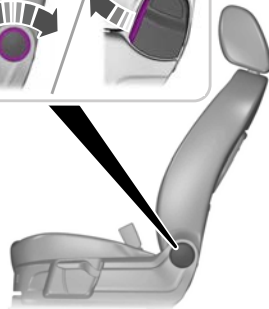
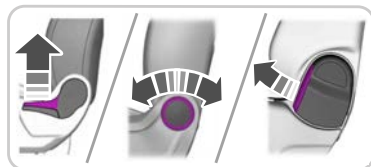
Adjusting the Height of the Driver Seat



E70730

Seats

Recline Adjustment



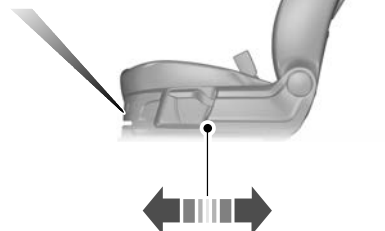
E70731

MANUAL SEATS - 5-DOOR

WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat when your vehicle is moving.

Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

WARNING: Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.



E147926

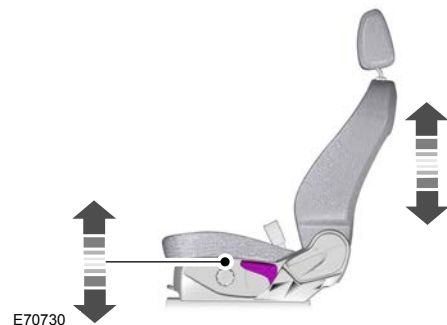
Adjusting the Lumbar Support (If Equipped)



E249179

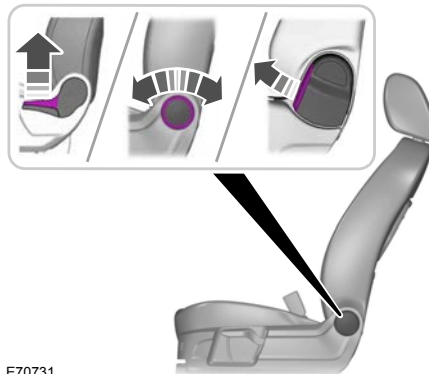
Seats

Adjusting the Height of the Driver Seat



E70730

Recline Adjustment



E70731

REAR SEATS

Folding the Seat Backrest



WARNING: When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.

1. Lower the head restraints.

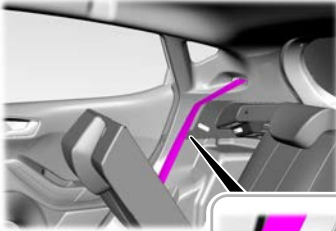


E248521

2. Press and hold the unlock buttons.
3. Push the seat backrest forward.

Note: Do not attempt to fold the rear seat cushion forward.

Seats



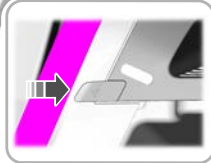
E249321

4. Place the seatbelts in the clips on the outermost trim.

Note: Make sure that the seatbelt is fully tightened into the retractor.

Unfolding the Seat Backrest

WARNING: When unfolding the seat backrests, make sure that the seatbelts are not trapped behind the seat.



WARNING: Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

HEATED SEATS

WARNING: Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.


Do not switch the heated seat on if the seat is wet.


The heated seat button is on the climate control assembly.



Repeatedly press the button to adjust the temperature.

Auxiliary Power Points

 **WARNING:** Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not use a power point for operating a cigar lighter. Incorrect use of the power points can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug.

Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.

Keep the power point caps closed when not in use.

Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point.

You can use the power point for up to 30 minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Note: When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.


To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

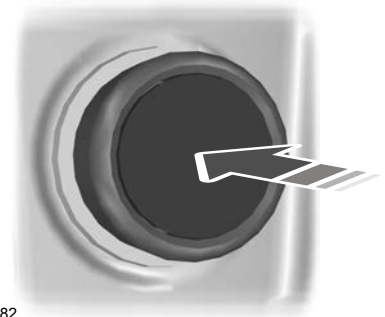
- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

Power points may be in the following locations:

- On the center console.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- Inside the luggage compartment.

CIGAR LIGHTER

 **WARNING:** Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.



E103382

Press the element in to use the cigar lighter. It pops out after a short period of time.

Do not hold the cigar lighter element pressed in.

Note: If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.

Note: If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may run out of charge.

Note: When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.

Wireless Accessory Charger

LOCATING THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER



The charging area is below the climate control.



CHARGING A WIRELESS DEVICE



WARNING: Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.

Place the device within the area shown and with the charging side down to begin charging. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.

Make sure the charging area is clean and free from obstruction before charging a device to allow the device to lay flat on the charging area.

The system supports one wireless charging compatible device on the charging area.

Note: *Placing the device outside the area shown could affect the charging process.*

Note: *Charging time and temperature are dependent on the device used. The system stops charging the device if it reaches a high temperature.*

Note: *Devices without built-in Qi standards for wireless charging require an additional Qi receiver or sleeve.*

Note: *For compatible devices with built-in Qi wireless charging capability, the charging performance may be affected if your device is in a case. It may be necessary to remove the case to wirelessly charge your device.*

Note: *Software and firmware updates to your device could affect the charging operation.*

Do not place items with a magnetic strip, for example passports, parking tickets or credit cards near the charging area when charging a device. This could damage the magnetic strip.

Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins or keys on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance.

Wireless Accessory Charger

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER INDICATORS

Indicator LED	Description
Green	Your device is fully charged.
Yellow	Your device is charging.
Flashing yellow	The system detects an obstruction on the charging area. Remove the obstruction or place your device in the correct position on the charging area.

Storage Compartments

CUP HOLDERS

Note: Stow items in the cupholder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes, including hot drinks which may spill.



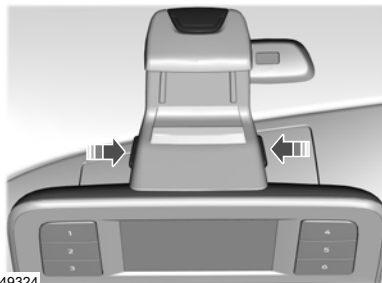
WARNING: Use only soft cups in the cup holders. Hard objects can injure you in a crash.

DEVICE HOLDER

Installing the Device Holder

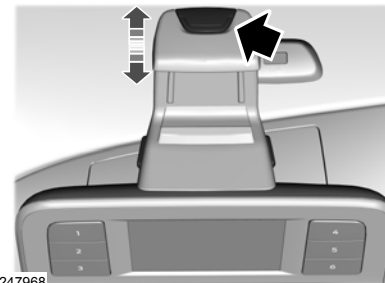
1. Remove the cap from the rear of the audio unit.
2. Attach the device holder to the rear of the audio unit and press down until a click sounds.

Removing the Device Holder



1. Press the locking buttons together and remove the device holder.
2. Attach the cap to the rear of the audio unit.

Installing a Device



1. Press the button to unlock the clamp.
2. Place the device on the lower rubber mat.
3. Adjust the lid to secure the device.
4. Press the button again to lock the clamp.

Note: Do not leave a device in the device holder when leaving your vehicle.

Removing a Device

1. Press the button to unlock the clamp.
2. Lift the lid.
3. Remove the device from the device holder.
4. Press the button again to lock the clamp.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING: Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.

WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

IGNITION SWITCH



E247596

Note: Make sure the key is clean before inserting it into any lock cylinder.

Note: Do not leave the key in the ignition for an extended period of time when the engine is not running. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Switching the Ignition Off

Turn the key to position **0**.

Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

Turn the key to position **I**. Electrical accessories, for example the radio, operate without the engine running.

Switching the Ignition On

Turn the key to position **II**. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Starting the Engine

Turn the key to position **III**. Release the key when the engine starts.

PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH

Switching the Ignition On to Accessory Mode



Press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal. It is on the instrument panel near the steering wheel. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Press the push button ignition switch again without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal to switch the ignition off.

Note: The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

Note: The ignition turns off if you leave your vehicle unattended. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge.

Note: A valid passive key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

Starting The Engine - Vehicles with Manual Transmission (If Equipped)

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.
2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: If you release the clutch pedal during engine starting, the engine stops cranking.

Starting The Engine - Vehicles with Automatic Transmission (If Equipped)

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: If you release the brake pedal during engine starting, the engine stops cranking.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Vehicles with a Diesel Engine (If Equipped)

Note: *The engine does not crank until the glow plug indicator turns off. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.*

Failure to Start - Vehicles with Manual Transmission (If Equipped)

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start the engine, do the following:

1. Insert the passive key into the backup position. See **Passive Key Backup Position** (page 58).
2. With the passive key in this position, you can use the push button ignition switch to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

If the engine does not crank after you fully press the clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch, do the following:

1. Fully press the clutch pedal and the brake pedal.
2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary - Vehicles with Manual Transmission (If Equipped)

1. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: *The ignition, all electrical circuits and all warning lamps and indicators turn off.*

2. Apply the parking brake.

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary - Vehicles with Automatic Transmission (If Equipped)

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: *The ignition, all electrical circuits and all warning lamps and indicators turn off.*

4. Apply the parking brake.

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving - Vehicles with Manual Transmission (If Equipped)



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving - Vehicles with Automatic Transmission (If Equipped)



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but

higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

Fast Restart

The system allows you to start the engine within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 10 seconds of switching the engine off, fully press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

When you start the engine, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door when the engine is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

Starting System Information Messages

Message	Action
Full accessory power active	Displays if you switch the ignition on and do not start the engine.
Press brake to start	Displays when you start the engine as a reminder to fully press the brake pedal.
Press clutch to start	Displays when you start the engine as a reminder to fully press the clutch pedal.
Press brake and clutch to start	Displays when you start the engine as a reminder to fully press the brake and clutch pedals.
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if the engine fails to start.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Message	Action
No key detected	Displays if the system does not detect a valid passive key.
Starting system malfunction	Displays if you are unable to start the engine with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Restart now or key is needed	Displays for 10 seconds if you switch the engine off and the system does not detect a valid passive key. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

Key Outside Vehicle Audible Warning

Sounds when you remove the passive key from your vehicle and the engine is running.

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Note: You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P).

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

2. Turn the key to position **III**.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 154).

Failure to Start

If you cannot start the engine after 3 attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

- 5. Turn the key to position **III** and wait until the engine stops.
- 6. Release the accelerator pedal.
- 7. Start the engine.

Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 154).

Automatic Engine Shutdown

For vehicles with a push button ignition switch, the engine shuts down if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off to save battery power. Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down to save fuel. Start your vehicle as normal.

Automatic Engine Shutdown Override

You can stop the shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Switching off the automatic engine shutdown in the information display.
- Pressing the **OK** or **RESET** button during the 30-second countdown.

Switching the Automatic Engine Shutdown On or Off

To switch the automatic engine shutdown on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Vehicle settings	Press the OK button.
30min max idle	Press the OK button.

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Turn the key to position **O**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 154).

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. Shift into park (P).
3. Turn the key to position **O**.
4. Apply the parking brake.

Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 154).

Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes



WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

Engine Warning Lamps



Malfunction Indicator Lamp
Check Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.



Powertrain Warning Lamp

Starting and Stopping the Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Starting System Information Messages

Message	Action
Full accessory power active	Displays if you switch the ignition on and do not start the engine.
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if you exceed the starting time limit. You cannot attempt to start the engine for 15 minutes. If you cannot start the engine after 15 minutes passes, have your vehicle immediately checked.
Starting system malfunction	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Note: *You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.*

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in neutral.

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

Starting and Stopping the Engine

2. Turn the key to position **III**.

Note: *The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.*

Note: *The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.*

Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 154).

Failure to Start

If you cannot start the engine after 3 attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.
2. Apply the parking brake.

3. Shift into neutral.
4. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
5. Turn the key to position **III** and wait until the engine stops.
6. Release the accelerator pedal.
7. Start the engine.

Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 154).

Automatic Engine Shutdown

For vehicles with a push button ignition switch, the engine shuts down if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off to save battery power. Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer

counting down. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down to save fuel. Start your vehicle as normal.

Automatic Engine Shutdown Override

You can stop the shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Switching off the automatic engine shutdown in the information display.
- Pressing the **OK** or **RESET** button during the 30-second countdown.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Switching the Automatic Engine Shutdown On or Off

To switch the automatic engine shutdown on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Vehicle settings	Press the OK button.
30min max idle	Press the OK button.

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Shift into neutral.
2. Turn the key to position **0**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 154).

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. Turn the key to position **0**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 154).

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes



WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

Starting System Information Messages

Message	Action
Full accessory power active	Displays if you switch the ignition on and do not start the engine.
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if you exceed the starting time limit. You cannot attempt to start the engine for 15 minutes. If you cannot start the engine after 15 minutes passes, have your vehicle immediately checked.
Starting system malfunction	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Engine Warning Lamps



Malfunction Indicator Lamp
Check Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.



Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in neutral.

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Turn the key to position **II**.
2. Wait until the glow plug indicator turns off.
3. Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

4. Turn the key to position **III**.

Note: *Releasing the clutch pedal when the engine is starting stops the engine cranking and the ignition returns to on.*

Note: *When the temperature is below -15°C (5°F), you may need to crank the engine for up to 10 seconds.*

Note: *You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.*

Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 154).

Failure to Start

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

If the engine does not start, do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Shift into neutral.
4. Turn the key to position **III** until the engine starts.

Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 154).

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Shift into neutral.
2. Turn the key to position **0**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 154).

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. Turn the key to position **O**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 154).

Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes



WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

Glow Plug Indicator



If it illuminates, wait until it turns off before starting.

Engine Warning Lamps



Malfunction Indicator Lamp
Check Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the diesel particulate filter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.



Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Starting System Information Messages

Message	Action
Full accessory power active	Displays if you switch the ignition on and do not start the engine.
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if your vehicle fails to start.
Starting system malfunction	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

Vehicles With a Turbocharger



WARNING: Do not switch the engine off when it is running at high speed. If you do, the turbocharger will continue running after the engine oil pressure has dropped to zero. This will lead to premature turbocharger bearing wear.

Release the accelerator pedal. Wait until the engine has reached idle speed and then switch it off.

ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (IF EQUIPPED)



WARNING: Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.



WARNING: Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

The heater warms the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to quickly respond. The equipment includes a heater element installed in the engine block and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 220-240 volt AC electrical source.

Note: *The heater is most effective when the ambient temperature is below -18°C (0°F).*

Starting and Stopping the Engine

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use an extension cord suitable for outdoor use and in cold temperatures. It should be clearly marked that it is suitable for use with outdoor appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Make sure that you park your vehicle in a clean area, clear of combustible materials.
- Make sure that you firmly connect the heater, heater cord and extension cord.
- Check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup when the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.

- Make sure that you unplug and properly stow the system before starting and driving your vehicle. Make sure the protective cover seals the terminals of the block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Make sure that you check the heater system for proper operation before winter.

Using the Engine Block Heater

The engine block heater plug may be found in one of the following locations:

- Under the hood.
- In the front fog lamp bezel.
- Front lower grille.

Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry before use. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It reaches maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

Unique Driving Characteristics

AUTO-START-STOP - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, EXCLUDING: MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Principle of Operation

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights. Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for an increased number of engine starts.

The system does not stop the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- If you have opened the driver door.
- If you have unfastened the driver seatbelt.
- If your vehicle is at high altitude.

- If you have switched the heated windshield on.
- If the engine is warming up.
- If the outside temperature is too low or too high.
- If the battery charge is low or the battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- To maintain the interior climate or reduce fogging.

The system restarts the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- If you switch the heated windshield on.
- If you switch maximum defrost on.
- If your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- To maintain adequate brake assistance.
- To maintain the interior climate or reduce fogging.

Note: The blower motor speed could change when the system restarts the engine.

Using Auto-Start-Stop

Stopping the Engine

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Shift into neutral.

3. Release the clutch pedal.

Note: Power assist steering turns off when the engine is off.

Restarting the Engine

Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: To obtain maximum benefit from the system, shift into neutral and release the clutch pedal whenever you stop your vehicle for more than three seconds.

Note: The system provides stall recovery. To restart the engine after stalling, fully press the clutch pedal.

Switching the System On and Off



The system turns on when you switch the ignition on. Press the switch to switch it off.

Note: **OFF** illuminates in the switch.

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

The auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take an action.



The auto-start stop indicator illuminates grey with a strike out when the system is not available.

Unique Driving Characteristics

Note: The system turns off when it detects a malfunction. If it remains off, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Auto-Start-Stop Warning

Sounds when you open the driver door and the system has stopped the engine.

Information Messages

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the accelerator pedal, brake pedal or clutch pedal.
Auto StartStop Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but cannot because the transmission is in gear.	Shift into neutral and restart the engine.

Replacing the Battery

Replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification for the system to function correctly.

Unique Driving Characteristics

AUTO-START-STOP - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, EXCLUDING: MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Principle of Operation

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights. Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for an increased number of engine starts.

The system does not stop the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- If you have opened the driver door.
- If you have unfastened the driver seatbelt.
- If your vehicle is at high altitude.

- If you have switched the heated windshield on.
- If your vehicle is on a steep grade.
- If the engine is warming up.
- If the outside temperature is too low or too high.
- If the battery charge is low or the battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- To maintain the interior climate or reduce fogging.

The system restarts the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- If you have opened the driver door.
- If you have unfastened the driver seatbelt.
- If you switch the heated windshield on.
- If you switch maximum defrost on.
- If your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- To maintain adequate brake assistance.
- To maintain the interior climate or reduce fogging.

Note: *The blower motor speed could change when the system restarts the engine.*

Using Auto-Start-Stop



WARNING: Apply the parking brake and shift into park (P) before leaving your vehicle.

Stopping the Engine

Stop your vehicle and keep your foot on the brake pedal and the transmission in drive (D).

Note: *The engine stops if you shift into park (P) or neutral (N) regardless of whether you have your foot on the brake pedal or not.*

Note: *Power assist steering turns off when the engine is off.*

Restarting the Engine

- Release the brake pedal.
- Press the accelerator pedal.
- Shift into drive (D), reverse (R) or sport (S).

Switching the System On and Off



The system turns on when you switch the ignition on. Press the switch to switch it off.

Note: *OFF illuminates in the switch.*

Unique Driving Characteristics

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

The auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take an action.



The auto-start stop indicator illuminates grey with a strike out when the system is not available.

Note: *The system turns off when it detects a malfunction. If it remains off, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

Information Messages

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press brake to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Shift to P Restart engine	The system is not functioning.	Shift into park (P) and restart the engine yourself.

Replacing the Battery

Replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification for the system to function correctly.

HYBRID VEHICLE OPERATION

Your vehicle has a 48 volt mild hybrid system. The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions by using regenerative charging and stopping the engine when your vehicle is coasting at a speed less than the engine stop speed that you have set. See **Setting the Engine Stop Speed** (page 172).


Note: *Regenerative charging results in a greater degree of engine braking. This is normal.*

Auto-Start-Stop - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights or when your vehicle is coasting at a speed less than the engine stop speed that you have set. See **Setting the Engine Stop Speed** (page 172). The system is designed to stop the engine when the transmission is in gear or in neutral.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

AUTO-START-STOP SETTINGS

Setting the Engine Stop Speed

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Rolling StartStop**.
4. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.



Press the switch to switch the system off.

Note: **OFF** illuminates in the switch.

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

Note: *The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

STOPPING THE ENGINE

Stopping the Engine in Gear

1. Press the brake pedal and slow your vehicle down to 15 km/h (9 mph) or less.

Note: *You can set the speed at which the system stops the engine through the information display.*

2. Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: *Power assist steering remains on when the engine stops.*

Stopping the Engine in Neutral

1. Press the brake pedal and slow your vehicle down to 15 km/h (9 mph) or less.

Auto-Start-Stop - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

Note: You can set the speed at which the system stops the engine through the information display.

2. Press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch pedal.

Note: Power assist steering remains on when the engine stops.

RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Restarting the Engine in Gear

Release the brake pedal.

Restarting the Engine in Neutral

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.

2. Select a gear.

AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

Note: You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.

AUTO-START-STOP AUDIBLE WARNING

The Auto-Start-Stop audible warning sounds if you open the driver door when the system has stopped the engine.

Auto-Start-Stop - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

Auto-Start-Stop – Information Messages

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Shift into neutral and restart the engine yourself.
Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine	The system cannot restart the engine.	Shift into neutral.
Auto StartStop Press clutch to start engine	The system cannot restart the engine.	Fully press the clutch pedal.

Auto-Start-Stop - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked Questions

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is unfastened.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch **MAX A/C** on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO₂ emissions.

Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter generator that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

Fuel and Refueling

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



WARNING: Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



WARNING: Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always switch the engine off before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

FUEL QUALITY - GASOLINE



WARNING: Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.



WARNING: Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds, for example manganese-based. They could damage the emission system.

Fuel and Refueling

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.



E268502


Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

Note: We recommend that you only use high quality fuel. We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments.

Long-Term Storage

Most gasoline contains ethanol. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain ethanol if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months.

FUEL QUALITY - DIESEL

 **WARNING:** Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.

Use diesel that meets the specification defined by EN 590 or the relevant national specification.



E268503

Your vehicle is suitable for use with biodiesel blends up to 7% (B7).

Note: We recommend that you only use high quality fuel. We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments.

Note: We do not recommend the use of additional additives to prevent fuel waxing.

Long-Term Storage

Most diesel fuels contain biodiesel. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain biodiesel if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months.

FUEL FILLER FUNNEL LOCATION

The fuel filler funnel is in the spare wheel storage tray.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Running out of fuel can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If your vehicle runs out of fuel:

- Add a minimum of 5 L (1.1 gal) of fuel to restart the engine.
- You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

Note: If your vehicle is on a steep slope, more fuel may be required.

Fuel and Refueling

Filling a Portable Fuel Container



WARNING: Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container



WARNING: Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.



WARNING: Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.



WARNING: Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 177).

Note: Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.



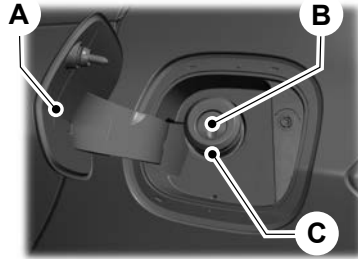
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

Note: Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

Fuel and Refueling

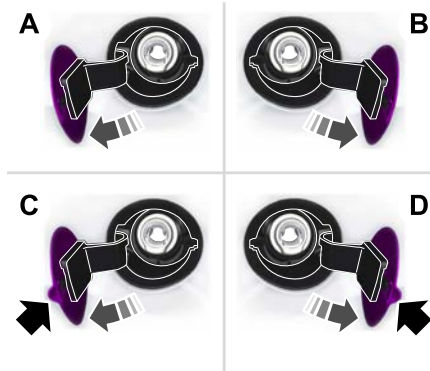
REFUELING

Refueling System Overview



- A Fuel filler door.
- B Fuel tank filler valve.
- C Fuel tank filler pipe.

Your vehicle does not have a fuel tank filler cap.



- A Left-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
- B Right-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
- C Left-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.
- D Right-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.

Refueling Your Vehicle

⚠ WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

⚠ WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

⚠ WARNING: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

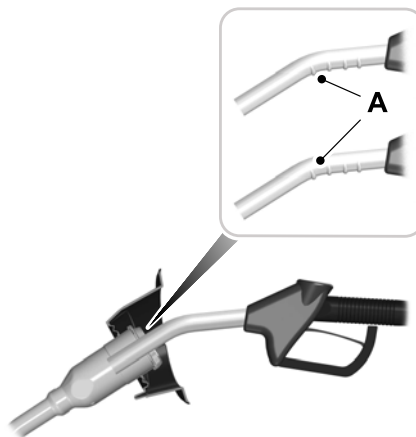
Fuel and Refueling

⚠ WARNING: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

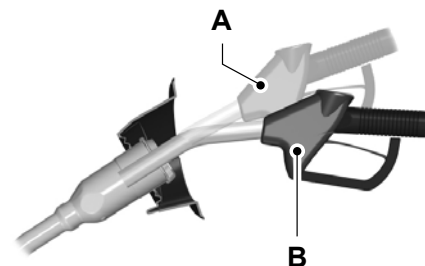
⚠ WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

⚠ WARNING: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.

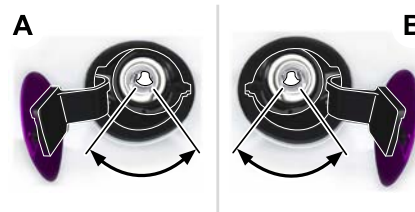


3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.



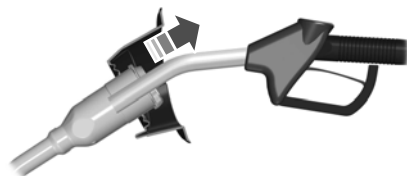
E139203

4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.

Fuel and Refueling



6. When you finish refueling slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Refueling System Warning (If Equipped)

If the fuel tank filler valve does not fully close, a message could appear in the information display.

Message
Check fuel fill inlet

If the message appears, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off.
2. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Fully open the fuel filler door.
5. Check the fuel tank filler valve for any debris that may be restricting its movement.
6. Remove any debris from the fuel tank filler valve.
7. Fully insert a fuel pump nozzle or the fuel filler funnel provided with your vehicle into the fuel filler pipe. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 177). This action should dislodge any debris that may be preventing the fuel tank filler valve from fully closing.
8. Remove the fuel pump nozzle or fuel filler funnel from the fuel filler pipe.
9. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Note: The message may not immediately reset. If the message continues to appear and a warning lamp illuminates, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

FUEL CONSUMPTION

We derive CO₂ and fuel consumption figures in laboratory tests according to Regulation (EC) 715/2007 or CR (EC) 692/2008 and subsequent amendments.

They are intended as a comparison between makes and models of vehicles. They are not intended to represent the real world fuel consumption you may get from your vehicle.

Real world fuel consumption is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, add-on accessories, payload and towing.

Advertised Capacity

The advertised capacity is the maximum amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 367).

In addition, the fuel tank contains an empty reserve. The empty reserve is an unspecified amount of fuel that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

Note: The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.

Fuel and Refueling

Fuel Economy

Your vehicle calculates fuel economy figures through the trip computer average fuel function. See **Trip Computer** (page 114).

The first 1,500 km (1,000 mi) of driving is the break-in period of the engine. A more accurate measurement is obtained after 3,000 km (2,000 mi).

Impacting Fuel Economy

- Incorrect tire inflation pressures. See **Tire Pressures** (page 346).
- Fully loading your vehicle.
- Carrying unnecessary weight.
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle such as bug deflectors, rollbars or light bars, running boards and ski racks.
- Using fuel blended with alcohol. See **Fuel Quality** (page 177).
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures.
- Fuel economy may decrease when driving short distances.
- You may get better fuel economy when driving on flat terrain than when driving on hilly terrain.

Engine Emission Control

CATALYTIC CONVERTER



WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



WARNING: The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.



WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle has various emission control components and a catalytic converter that enables it to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards.

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 277).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not use leaded fuel.
- Avoid running out of fuel.

Note: *Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

On-Board Diagnostics System

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this may indicate that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.



Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Failure to respond to a warning lamp may cause component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 108).

Engine Emission Control

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER



WARNING: Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

To reduce the risk of causing damage to the gasoline particulate filter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables.
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not ignore warning lamps, indicators or information messages.

Gasoline Particulate Filter Regeneration

Particles in the exhaust gas collect in the gasoline particulate filter causing a gradual restriction over time. This restriction is removed through a regeneration process controlled by the engine control system. The regeneration process converts the particles in the exhaust gas into harmless gases.

Regeneration occurs during normal driving, to varying degrees depending on how you drive. Passive regeneration occurs when you drive at moderate to high speed but if you generally drive short distances at low speed, the engine control system could actively raise the exhaust gas temperature to remove the particles that have collected in the filter to make sure that it continues to correctly operate.

To assist passive regeneration, we recommend that you make occasional journeys that allow you to:

- Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for a minimum of 20 minutes.
- Avoid prolonged engine idling.
- Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.

If the filter is saturated or is approaching saturation, a warning lamp illuminates or a message appears in the information display.

Note: *A warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the information display on some vehicles.*

If you do not take action when a warning lamp illuminates or a message appears in the information display, you could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Gasoline Particulate Filter Warning Lamps and Indicators



Malfunction indicator lamp.

Engine Emission Control

Gasoline Particulate Filter Information Messages

Message	Action
Exhaust filter at limit Drive to clean now	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for 20 minutes or until the message disappears.• Avoid prolonged engine idling.• Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.
Exhaust filter over limit Service now	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Drive at a moderate speed.• Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration.• Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER



WARNING: Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.



WARNING: The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter. The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and the diesel particulate filter heat up to very high temperatures after only a short period of engine operation and remain hot after you switch the engine off.



WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle has various emission control components and a diesel particulate filter that enables it to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. It filters harmful diesel particulates, for example soot from the exhaust gas.

Engine Emission Control

To avoid damaging the diesel particulate filter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 277).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not ignore warning lamps or information messages regarding exhaust system cleaning and regeneration.

Note: *This could result in damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

On-Board Diagnostics System

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this indicates that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.



Engine coolant temperature warning lamp.



Ignition warning lamp.



Malfunction indicator lamp.



Powertrain warning Lamp.



Water in fuel warning lamp.

If you continue to drive your vehicle with a warning lamp illuminated, the engine could stop without warning. This could result in damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 108).

Diesel Particulate Filter Automatic Regeneration



WARNING: Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.



WARNING: The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter. The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and the diesel particulate filter heat up to very high temperatures after only a short period of engine operation and remain hot after you switch the engine off.

Engine Emission Control

The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain correct operation. The emission control system automatically carries out this process. As soot gathers in the system it begins to restrict the filter. The soot that gathers inside the filter is cleaned in two different ways, passive regeneration and active regeneration. Both methods occur automatically and require no actions from the driver. During automatic regeneration, the system cleans the diesel particulate filter by oxidizing the soot. Cleaning happens during normal engine operating conditions at varying levels depending on driving conditions.



Diesel particulate filter warning lamp.

If the diesel particulate filter is near or at saturation, a warning lamp or information message appears in the information display. Drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective diesel particulate filter cleaning.

The warning lamp continues to illuminate until the automatic regeneration process completes. Continue to drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective diesel particulate filter cleaning until the warning lamp turns off.

Failure to carry out regeneration when required could result in a clogged diesel particulate filter. If the diesel particulate filter fills beyond the regeneration threshold, the system disables the ability to carry out regeneration. This could result in damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Where vehicle use meets any of the following conditions:

- Driving short distances.
- Prolonged engine idling.
- Frequently switching the engine on and off.
- High levels of acceleration and deceleration.

We recommend you assist the regeneration process by:

- Avoiding prolonged engine idling.
- Drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective cleaning. Drive at a steady vehicle speed of 48 km/h (30 mph) or above for approximately 20 minutes.



If the soot load in the diesel particulate filter reaches a critical level, the malfunction indicator lamp illuminates with the diesel particulate filter warning message. A service regeneration must be performed to recover the particulate filter. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to prevent further damage.

Automatic regeneration raises the exhaust temperature to eliminate the soot particles. During cleaning, soot particles are converted to harmless gasses. Once cleaned, the diesel particulate filter continues to trap harmful diesel particles.

If you are driving your vehicle in a manner that allows effective cleaning, a message may appear in the information display to indicate automatic regeneration is in progress.

If you are not driving your vehicle in a manner that allows effective cleaning, a message may appear in the information display to instruct you to drive in a manner that allows automatic regeneration.

Engine Emission Control

The automatic regeneration process is most effective when you drive at a steady vehicle speed of 48 km/h (30 mph) or above for approximately 20 minutes. The frequency and duration of the regeneration process varies by how you drive your vehicle, the outside air temperature and altitude.

Frequency varies between 160 km (100 mi) and 500 km (310 mi) and each regeneration process lasts between 10 and 20 minutes.

Note: *Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.*

Note: *During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you could smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to the high temperatures reached during the regeneration process. This is normal.*

Manual Transmission

MANUAL TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS

Do not rest your hand on the gearshift lever or use the gearshift lever to hang and support objects. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to keep your vehicle stationary when waiting on a hill. This could cause damage to the clutch not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Failure to fully press the clutch pedal could cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage to the transmission.

SHIFTING INTO REVERSE - 5-SPEED MANUAL TRANSMISSION

Do not shift into reverse when your vehicle is moving. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

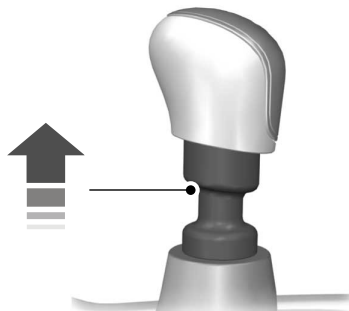
1. Fully press the brake pedal.

2. Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral before shifting into reverse.

SHIFTING INTO REVERSE - 6-SPEED MANUAL TRANSMISSION

Do not shift into reverse when your vehicle is moving. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral.



E99067

3. Raise the collar and shift into reverse.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION SHIFT INDICATORS



It illuminates to advise you that shifting gear may give better fuel economy or lower emissions.



CHECKING THE CLUTCH FLUID LEVEL

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 310).

CLUTCH FLUID SPECIFICATION

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

Manual Transmission

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

MANUAL TRANSMISSION – TROUBLESHOOTING

Manual Transmission – Frequently Asked Questions

What should I do if any gear is not fully engaged?

Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, fully press the clutch pedal again and shift into gear.

Automatic Transmission

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit engine performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.



WARNING: When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITIONS

Park (P)

In park (P), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels and the transmission is locked. You can start the engine with the transmission in this position.

Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

Reverse (R)

Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idle speed.

Neutral (N)

In neutral (N), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels but the transmission is not locked. In neutral (N) your vehicle has the ability to roll freely. You can start the engine with the transmission in this position.

Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal position for driving.

Low (L) - 7-Speed Automatic Transmission, Vehicles Without: Paddle Shifters

Low (L) provides maximum engine braking. You can shift into low (L) at any vehicle speed.

Manual (M) - 7-Speed Automatic Transmission, Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters

Manual (M) provides permanent manual control of the gear selection.

Note: You can shift into manual (M) at any vehicle speed.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITION INDICATORS - 7-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITHOUT: PADDLE SHIFTERS

P R N D L

The instrument cluster displays the current position.

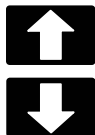
Automatic Transmission

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITION INDICATORS - 7-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PADDLE SHIFTERS

P R N D M

The instrument cluster displays the current position.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION SHIFT INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITH: PADDLE SHIFTERS



Shift indicators illuminate to advise you that shifting gear may give better fuel economy or lower emissions.

MANUALLY SHIFTING GEARS

Shifting Using the Paddle Shifters

You can only manually shift gears in drive (D) or manual (M).

Manually Shifting Gears in Drive (D)



Pull any paddle to switch the feature on.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (-) to downshift.

Note: The feature turns off if neither paddle is pulled within a short period of time.

Note: Hold the right paddle for a few seconds to turn off the feature manually.

Manually Shifting Gears in Manual (M)



- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (-) to downshift.

Shift into drive (D) to switch the feature off.

BRAKE SHIFT INTERLOCK

What Is Brake Shift Interlock

Brake shift interlock prevents you from shifting out of park (P) when you have switched the ignition on and not pressed the brake pedal.

Automatic Transmission

Brake Shift Interlock Precautions

⚠ WARNING: Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the stoplamps are working.

⚠ WARNING: When doing this procedure, you need to take the transmission out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.

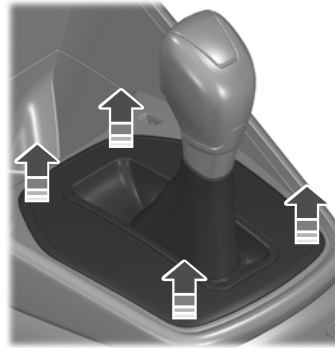
⚠ WARNING: If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

In the event of an electrical malfunction, it is possible that a fuse has blown or the stoplamps are not working.

If the vehicle battery has no charge, jump start your vehicle. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 277).

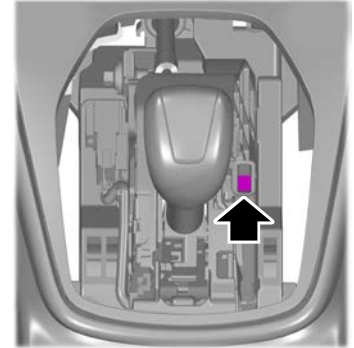
Using Brake Shift Interlock

Use the brake shift interlock lever to move the selector lever out of park (P) if you cannot start the engine.



E269819

1. Remove the panel.



2. Locate the access hole.
3. Using a flat-bladed screwdriver, push the brake shift interlock lever toward the front of your vehicle and hold it there.
4. Move the selector lever from park (P) to neutral (N).
5. Install the panel.
6. Press the brake pedal, start the engine and release the parking brake.

Automatic Transmission

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when you open the driver door and you have not moved the transmission selector to park (P).

Transmission Not in Park (P) Audible Warning

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – TROUBLESHOOTING

Automatic Transmission – Information Messages

Message	Description
Transmission malfunction Service now	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission limited function See manual	The transmission has limited functionality. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission too hot Press brake Transmission overheating Stop safely	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, leave the engine running and allow the transmission to cool. Wait until the message disappears.
Transmission not in Park	Displays as a reminder to shift into park (P).

Brakes

GENERAL INFORMATION

Note: Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out. If your vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Note: Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear. See **Cleaning the Wheels** (page 326).

Note: Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this the hazard warning flashers may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Shift the transmission to park (P) (automatic transmission) or to a low gear (manual transmission), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal and the area around it for any items or debris that may be obstructing its movement. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the dealer for service.

Brake Assist

Brake assist detects when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. Brake assist can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control and vehicle stability during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Note: If the system activates, the brake pedal may pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.

PARKING BRAKE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION



WARNING: Always set the parking brake fully.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

Brakes

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

Note: Do not press the release button while pulling the lever up.

To apply the parking brake:

1. Press the foot brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the parking brake lever up to its fullest extent.

To release the parking brake:

1. Press the brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the lever up slightly.
3. Press the release button and push the lever down.

PARKING BRAKE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake and make sure you shift into park (P). Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

To apply the parking brake:

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.

2. Pull the parking brake lever upward to its fullest extent.

Note: Do not press the release button when pulling the parking brake lever upward.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

To release the parking brake:

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Slightly pull the parking brake lever upward.
3. Press the release button and push the parking brake lever downward.

HILL START ASSIST



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or first gear for manual transmission.



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system turns off if there is a malfunction or if you excessively rev the engine.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary on a slope for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows you time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when the engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

The system activates on any slope that causes your vehicle to roll.

Brakes

Note: *There is no warning lamp to indicate the system is either on or off.*

Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed and shift into first gear when facing uphill or reverse (R) when facing downhill.
2. The system activates if the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle remains on the slope without rolling away for a few seconds. This hold time increases if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Pull away in the normal manner.

Switching the System On and Off

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on and you cannot switch the system off.

Traction Control

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

USING TRACTION CONTROL



WARNING: The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily if the system detects a failure. Make sure you did not manually disable the traction control system using the information display controls or the switch. If the stability control and traction control light is still illuminating steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

Switching the System On and Off



Press the button on the center console.

Note: When you switch the traction control off, stability control remains on.

Note: The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.

Note: When you switch the system on or off, a warning lamp illuminates in the instrument cluster. It also illuminates if the system activates or if the system detects a malfunction. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 108).

Stability Control

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

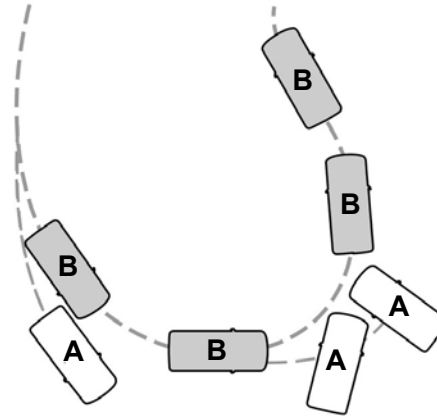
Electronic Stability Control



WARNING: The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

The system supports stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path. The system does this by braking individual wheels and reducing engine torque.

The system also provides an enhanced traction control function by reducing engine torque if the wheels spin when you accelerate. This helps to pull away on slippery roads or loose surfaces, and improves comfort by limiting wheel spin in hairpin bends.



E72903

- A Without ESC.
- B With ESC.

Stability Control Warning Lamp



Flashes during operation. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 108).

USING STABILITY CONTROL - EXCLUDING: ST

Note: The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

You can switch the traction control system off and on. See **Using Traction Control** (page 198).

Parking Aids (If Equipped)

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION



WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



WARNING: Traffic control systems, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



WARNING: The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

Note: Some accessories such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks can cause reduced performance or false alerts.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Note: The sensing system cannot be turned off when a MyKey is present. See **Principle of Operation** (page 59).

We recommend that you take some time to get to know the system and its limitations by reading this section.

The sensing system warns the driver of obstacles within a certain range of your vehicle. The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.



You can turn the system on or off by pressing the parking aid button. If your vehicle does not have a parking aid button, the system can be switched off through the information display menu or from the pop-up message that appears once you shift the transmission into reverse (R). See **General Information** (page 113).

If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display and does not allow you to switch the system on.

See **Information Messages** (page 118).

REAR PARKING AID



WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



WARNING: The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

If the system malfunctions, a message appears in the information display.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover up the sensors.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Parking Aids (If Equipped)

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Note: Some add-on accessories, for example large trailer hitches or bike or surfboard racks can cause reduced performance or false alerts.

The sensors are active when the transmission is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h (3 mph). When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system may reduce the set volume.

A warning tone sounds when an object approaches your vehicle. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the center of the rear bumper.

Note: There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.



E130178

Sensor coverage area is up to 180 cm (70 in) from the rear bumper.

The system detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at low speed and an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example another vehicle at low speed.

If your vehicle remains stationary for two seconds the audible warning turns off. If your vehicle moves backward the tone sounds again.

Note: If the detected object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the rear bumper, the audible warning does not turn off.

Object Distance Indicator (If Equipped)

When you shift into reverse (R), the system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are gray.

Parking Aids (If Equipped)

Rear Parking Aid Information Messages

Message	Description
Park Pilot malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check Park Pilot	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check rear Park Pilot	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Rear Park Pilot not available Sensor blocked See manual	A sensor is blocked or the system has malfunctioned. Clean the bumper or remove any obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

FRONT PARKING AID



WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



WARNING: The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

The sensors are on the front bumper.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover up the sensors.*

Note: *Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.*

The sensors are active when the transmission is in any position other than park (P). When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system may reduce the set volume.

A warning tone sounds when an object approaches your vehicle. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the front bumper.

The system turns off when the vehicle speed reaches 8 km/h (5 mph).

Parking Aids (If Equipped)



Sensor coverage area is up to 70 cm (28 in) from the center of the bumper.

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the system detects objects when your vehicle is moving at low speed or an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example another vehicle at low speed. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warning turns off after two seconds.

If the transmission is in any forward gear, the system provides audible warnings when your vehicle is moving and an object is within the detection area. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warning turns off after two seconds and the visual warning turns off after four seconds.



Press the parking aid button to switch the system off.

If the system malfunctions, a message appears in the information display.

Object Distance Indicator (If Equipped)

The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are gray.

When you shift into reverse (R), the system provides audio warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving and the detected object is moving toward your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, the audio warnings stop after two seconds. Visual indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R).

When you shift into any forward gear, the system provides audio warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. When you stop your vehicle, the audio warnings stop after two seconds and visual indication stops after four seconds.

Note: If the detected object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.

When you shift into neutral (N), the system only provides visual indication if your vehicle is moving at a speed of approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) or below, for example, your vehicle is moving on a slope, and the system detects an object moving toward your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, visual indication stops after four seconds.

Parking Aids (If Equipped)

Front Parking Aid Information Messages

Message	Description
Park Pilot malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check Park Pilot	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check front Park Pilot	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Park Pilot not available Sensor blocked See manual	A sensor is blocked or the system has malfunctioned. Clean the bumper or remove any obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

SIDE SENSING SYSTEM



WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



WARNING: The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover up the sensors.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Note: If you switch traction control off, the side sensing system also turns off.

Note: Some accessories, for example large trailer hitches or bike or surfboard racks can cause reduced performance or false alerts.

Note: The system does not detect an object that is moving toward the side of your vehicle, for example another vehicle moving at low speed, if it does not pass a front or rear sensor.

The system uses the front and rear outermost parking aid sensors to detect objects that are near to the sides of your vehicle. The system displays them on a virtual map in the information display as your vehicle moves past them.

The sensors are on the front and rear bumpers.

Parking Aids (If Equipped)

The system may not function if:

- You switch the ignition on, off and back on within a few seconds.
- Your vehicle remains stationary for over two minutes.
- The anti-lock brake system activates.
- The traction control system activates.

To reinitialize the system, you may have to drive your vehicle approximately 3 m (10 ft).



The sensor coverage area is up to 60 cm (24 in) from the side of your vehicle.

When the system detects an object within the coverage area and the driving path of your vehicle, an audible warning sounds. As the object moves closer to your vehicle, the rate of the tone increases.

Object Distance Indicator (If Equipped)



The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are gray.

When you shift into reverse (R), the system provides audible warnings and visual indication when detected objects are within 60 cm (24 in) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warnings turn off after two seconds.

When you shift into any forward gear, the system provides audible warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warnings turn off after two seconds and visual indication turns off after four seconds.

When you shift into neutral (N), the system only provides visual indication if your vehicle is moving at a speed of approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) or below. For example, your vehicle is moving on a slope, and the system detects an object moving toward your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, visual indication turns off after four seconds.

Parking Aids (If Equipped)

If the system is not available, the side distance indicator blocks do not display.

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

The system assists parking into and out of parking spaces. Sensors are used to detect parking spaces. The system then steers as required to maneuver into or out of a parking space. You control the accelerator, brakes and changing gears.

Using Active Park Assist



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



The active park assist button is next to the gearshift lever.

Driving into a Parking Space

1. Press the active park assist button.

Note: The system searches for parallel parking spaces on the passenger side. Press the active park assist button again to make the system search for perpendicular spaces.

2. Use the direction indicator lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.
3. Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m (3 ft) away from and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

Note: A tone sounds and a message appears in the information display when active park assist finds a suitable parking space.

4. Bring your vehicle to a complete standstill.
5. Release the steering wheel and shift into reverse (R).
6. Drive backward and your vehicle steers itself into the parking space.
7. Follow the instructions on the information display.

Note: When parking is complete, a tone sounds and an information message appears.

Leaving a Parking Space

The system assists leaving only parallel parking spaces.

1. Press the active park assist button.
2. Use the direction indicator lever to choose the direction to leave.
3. Release the steering wheel and shift into reverse (R).
4. Follow the instructions on the information display.

Parking Aids (If Equipped)

Note: After the system drives your vehicle to a position where you can exit the parking space in a forward movement, a message appears instructing you to take full control of your vehicle.

Canceling Active Park Assist

To cancel parking assistance at any time, press the active park assist button or turn the steering wheel.

Note: It also cancels when your vehicle exceeds 9 km/h (6 mph).

Brake System Intervention

When active park assist is controlling the steering, it may under certain conditions apply the brakes to slow or stop your vehicle.

Note: This could cause the parking assistance to cancel.

Active Park Assist Troubleshooting

Symptom	Possible Cause
The system does not search for a parking space.	You may have switched traction control off.
	The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.
The system does not offer a parking space.	The sensors may be blocked. For example, snow, ice or large accumulations of dirt. Blocked sensors can affect how the system functions.
	The sensors in the front or rear bumper could be damaged.
	There is not enough room in the parking space for your vehicle to safely park.
	There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.
	The parking space is more than 1.5 m (5 ft) or less than 0.5 m (2 ft) away.
	The vehicle speed is greater than 35 km/h (22 mph) for parallel parking or greater than 30 km/h (19 mph) for perpendicular parking.
	You recently disconnected or replaced the battery. After you reconnect the battery you must drive your vehicle on a straight road for a short period of time.

Parking Aids (If Equipped)

Symptom	Possible Cause
The system does not correctly position your vehicle in a parking space.	An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from correctly aligning your vehicle.
	Vehicles or objects bordering the space may not be correctly parked.
	Your vehicle stopped too far past the parking space.
	The tires may not be correctly installed or maintained. For example, not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes.
	A repair or alteration changes the detection capabilities.
	A parked vehicle has a high attachment. For example, a salt sprayer, snowplow or moving truck bed.
	The parking space length or position of parked objects changes after your vehicle passes the space.
	You are using a spare tire or a tire that is significantly worn more than the other tires.
	The temperature around your vehicle quickly changes. For example, driving from a heated garage into cold outside temperature, or after leaving a car wash.

Parking Aids (If Equipped)

REAR VIEW CAMERA

WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

WARNING: Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Use caution when the liftgate is ajar. If the liftgate is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines disappear when the liftgate is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: The operation of the camera may vary depending on the ambient temperature, vehicle and road conditions.

WARNING: To help avoid personal injury always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the rear view camera.

The rear view camera provides an image of the area behind your vehicle. During operation, lines appear in the display that represents the path of your vehicle and proximity to objects behind it.



E249202

The camera is on the liftgate.

Using the Rear View Camera

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you shift the transmission into reverse (R).

Note: When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. In some vehicles, the guidelines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if the reverse lamps are not operating.
- If the camera is obstructed. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The camera is misaligned due to damage to the rear of your vehicle.

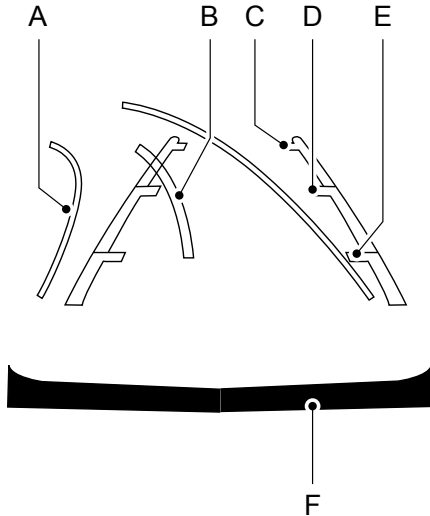
Rear View Camera Guidelines

WARNING: Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.

If the vehicle battery is disconnected, the guidelines are not fully functional directly after the battery is reconnected. The guidelines become fully functional after you drive your vehicle as straight as possible for five minutes at a minimum speed of 50 km/h (31 mph).

Parking Aids (If Equipped)

The system uses three types of guidelines to help you see what is behind your vehicle:



E142436

A Active guidelines. Show the

intended path of your vehicle when reversing.


- B Centerline. Helps you align the center of your vehicle with a trailer.
- C Fixed guidelines. Show the actual path of your vehicle when reversing in a straight line. Green zone.
- D Fixed guidelines. Show the actual path of your vehicle when reversing in a straight line. Yellow zone.
- E Fixed guidelines. Show the actual path of your vehicle when reversing in a straight line. Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

Active guidelines are only available with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If you change the steering wheel position when reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

Note: Guidelines do not display if the liftgate is open.

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. When the steering wheel position is straight the active guidelines do not display. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are further from your vehicle.

Manual Zoom

 **WARNING:** When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Press the zoom in or zoom out symbol to change the view.

Note: Manual zoom is only available when you shift into reverse (R).

Note: The rear bumper remains in the image as a reference point.

Note: Only the centerline shows when you switch on manual zoom.

System Settings

You can adjust the camera settings using the touchscreen. See **Settings** (page 431).

Parking Aids (If Equipped)

Rear View Camera Delay

You can switch this feature on or off using the touchscreen. The default setting is off. See **Settings** (page 431).

If you switch this feature on, the image continues to display when you shift from reverse (R) until:

- You shift to a forward gear and the vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift in to park (P).

Enhanced Parking Aids or Park Pilot

(If Equipped)

You can switch this feature on or off using the touchscreen. See **Settings** (page 431).

When the reverse sensing system detects an object, it displays red, yellow and green indicators at the top of the image.

Cruise Control

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h (20 mph).

USING CRUISE CONTROL



WARNING: Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On



Press the button.

Switching Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is in standby mode. The system also turns off when you switch the ignition off.

Note: *The set speed erases when you switch the system off.*

Setting the Cruise Speed

Drive to the required speed.



Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.



Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note: *The set speed appears in the information display.*

Changing the Set Speed



Press the toggle button upward to increase the set speed.



Press the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed.

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

Note: *If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed does not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.*

Canceling the Set Speed



Press the button, or press the brake pedal to cancel the set speed.

Note: *The set speed is stored.*

Note: *The system cancels if the vehicle speed drops below 16 km/h (10 mph) under the set speed when driving uphill.*

Resuming the Set Speed



Press to resume the set speed.

Cruise Control

Cruise Control Indicator



The indicator appears when you switch the system on.

USING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are winding, slippery, unpaved, or steep slopes.



WARNING: The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h (6 mph).



WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



WARNING: The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.



WARNING: The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.



WARNING: Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.



WARNING: Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

The system adjusts the vehicle speed to maintain the set gap between you and the vehicle in front of you in the same lane. You can select four gap settings.

The system uses a radar that projects a beam directly in front of your vehicle.



E248321

The adaptive cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press to set the system in standby mode.

Cruise Control



E260516

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed

Drive to the required speed.

SET+ Press the toggle button upward to set the current speed.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.



E249552

A vehicle graphic appears in the information display if the system detects a vehicle in front of you.

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.

Following a Vehicle

WARNING: When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance. A vehicle graphic appears in the information display.

Note: When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a direction indicator, adaptive cruise control may provide a small temporary acceleration to help you pass.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

Cruise Control

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

Note: The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.

Setting the Gap Distance



You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.

Note: It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.



The selected gap appears in the information display as shown by the bars in the image. You can select four gap settings.

Adaptive Cruise Control Distance Between Vehicle Settings

Set Speed km/h (mph)	Graphic Display - Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Time Gap - Seconds	Distance Gap m (yd)	Dynamic Behavior
100 (62)	1	1	28 (31)	Sport.
100 (62)	2	1.4	39 (43)	Normal.
100 (62)	3	1.8	50 (55)	Normal.
100 (62)	4	2.2	61 (67)	Comfort.

When you switch the ignition on, the system selects the last chosen gap setting.

Cruise Control

Overriding the System



WARNING: If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the vehicle graphic disappears from the information display.

Changing the Set Speed

SET+

Press the toggle button upward to increase the set speed.

SET-

Press the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed.

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

The system may apply the brakes to slow your vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed continuously displays in the information display when the system is active.

Canceling the Set Speed

CAN

Press the button, or tap the brake pedal.

The last set speed displays with a strikethrough and the last gap setting appears but does not erase.

Note: The set speed also cancels if you press the clutch pedal for an extended period.

Resuming the Set Speed

RES

Press the button.

The vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed continuously shows in the information display when the system is active.

Note: Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.

Automatic Cancellation

The system does not operate if the vehicle speed is below 20 km/h (12 mph). A tone sounds and adaptive braking releases if the vehicle speed falls below 20 km/h (12 mph).

Automatic cancellation can also occur when:

- The tires lose traction.
- The engine speed is too low.
- You apply the parking brake.

Note: If the engine speed drops too low, the information display advises you to shift to a lower gear.

Hilly Condition Usage

Select a lower gear when the system is active and you are driving downhill on steep grades, for example in mountainous areas. The system needs additional engine braking in these situations to reduce the load on the brake system to prevent it from overheating.

Note: A tone sounds and the system turns off if it applies brakes for an extended period of time. This allows the brakes to cool. The system operates after the brakes cool.

Cruise Control

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off



Press the button.

Note: The set speed erases when you switch the system off.

Detection Issues



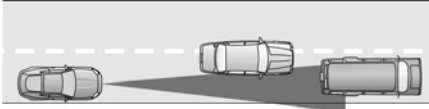
WARNING: On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.



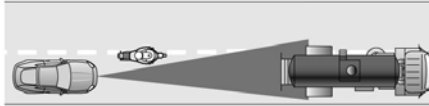
WARNING: If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The radar has a limited field of view. It does not detect all vehicles in all situations and could detect vehicles later than you expect. The lead vehicle graphic does not display if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

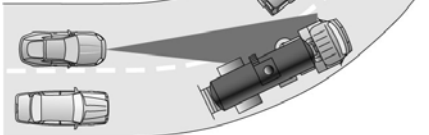
A



B



C



E71621

Detection issues can occur:

- A When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they fully move into your lane.
- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. You should stay alert and take action when necessary.

If something hits the front of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause the system to malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.


System Not Available

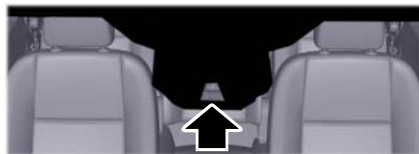
The system may not turn on if there is:

- A blocked sensor.
- High brake temperature.
- A failure in the system or a related system.

Cruise Control

Adaptive Cruise Control System Sensors

 **WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



E243054

The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



E244279

The radar is behind the front grille below the license plate.

A message displays if something obstructs the radar signals from the sensor. The system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function when something blocks the sensor.

Note: *You cannot see the sensor, it is behind a fascia panel.*

Note: *Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.*

Cruise Control

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar in the radiator grille is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the radiator grille in front of the radar or remove any obstruction.
The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that it is free from obstruction.
Heavy rain or snow interfere with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
Swirling water, snow or ice on the surface of the road interfere with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
You are in a desert or remote area with no other vehicles and no roadside objects.	Wait a short period of time or switch to normal cruise control.

Due to the nature of radar technology, a blocked sensor message could display when the sensor is not blocked. This can happen, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition self clears or clears after you switch the ignition off and on.

Switching to Normal Cruise Control



WARNING: Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

You can change from adaptive cruise control to cruise control using the information display.

Cruise Control

To switch between adaptive cruise control and normal cruise control, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Driver assist.	Press the menu button.
Cruise control	Press the OK button.
Mode	Press the OK button. Press the toggle button upward or downward to choose your required setting. Press the OK button.



The cruise control indicator replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, the system does not automatically respond to lead vehicles and adaptive braking does not activate. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Adaptive Cruise Control Indicator



The indicator appears when you switch the system on.

The indicator appears in the information display when the system is in standby mode and when you set the adaptive cruise speed.

Cruise Control

Adaptive Cruise Control Information Messages

Message	Action
Adaptive cruise control not available Sensor blocked See manual	The radar has reduced visibility.
Adaptive cruise control not available	The system is not available.
Adaptive cruise control malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cruise control active Adaptive braking off	You have switched normal cruise control on. Adaptive braking turns off.

Adaptive Cruise Control With Speed Sign Recognition (If Equipped)



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

The system combines speed sign recognition with adaptive cruise control. The system allows you to set the vehicle speed to the speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. For example, if the speed sign recognition system detects a 80 km/h (50 mph) speed limit, the vehicle speed is set to 80 km/h (50 mph).

Note: The system does not set the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign in the information display.

Note: You can override the set speed at any time.

Note: The adaptive cruise control gap setting normally operates.

Switching Between the Cruise Control Modes

You can change between the cruise control modes using the information display.

Cruise Control

To switch between the cruise control modes, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Driver assist.	Press the menu button.
Cruise control	Press the OK button.
Mode	Press the OK button. Press the toggle button upward or downward to choose your required setting. Press the OK button.

Intelligent Mode



E265663

If you select this mode, a bracket appears around the set speed and the detected speed limit sign in the information display. The system is designed to set the vehicle speed to the speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system before your vehicle passes the speed limit sign.

Under certain conditions, the system may not adjust the vehicle speed until after your vehicle passes the speed limit sign.

Note: The set speed adjusts when the system detects a different maximum speed limit.

If the system does not detect a speed limit, the vehicle speed remains at the current set speed.

Automatic Cancellation

If the speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit below the minimum adaptive cruise control set speed, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

Adjusting the Set Speed Tolerance Settings

You can set a permanent speed tolerance that is above or below the detected speed limit through the tolerance menu in the information display.

Cruise Control

To adjust the speed tolerance setting, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Driver assist.	Press the menu button.
Cruise control	Press the OK button.
Tolerance	Press the OK button. Press the toggle button upward or downward to choose your required speed setting. Press the OK button.

Adaptive Mode

If you select this mode, adaptive cruise control operates with manual set speed input. The system does not set the vehicle speed to the speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system.

Normal Mode

If you select this mode, normal cruise control operates. The gap setting does not display, the system does not automatically respond to lead vehicles and adaptive braking does not activate.

Adaptive Cruise Control With Speed Sign Recognition Information Messages

Message	Action
Adaptive cruise control Speed sign recognition not available	Navigation system based speed limit information is not available. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Cruise Control

USING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are winding, slippery, unpaved, or steep slopes.

WARNING: The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h (6 mph).

WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

WARNING: The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

WARNING: The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

WARNING: Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

WARNING: Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

The system adjusts the vehicle speed to maintain the set gap between you and the vehicle in front of you in the same lane. You can select four gap settings.

The system uses a radar that projects a beam directly in front of your vehicle.



E248321

The adaptive cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press to set the system in standby mode.

Cruise Control



E260516

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed

Drive to the required speed.

SET+

Press the toggle button upward to set the current speed.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.



E249552

A vehicle graphic appears in the information display if the system detects a vehicle in front of you.

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Follow a vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Keep the brake pedal fully pressed.
3. Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**.

The set speed adjusts to 30 km/h (20 mph).

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

Following a Vehicle



WARNING: When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance. A vehicle graphic appears in the information display.

Note: When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a direction indicator, adaptive cruise control may provide a small temporary acceleration to help you pass.

Cruise Control

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

Following a Vehicle to a Complete Stop

Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than three seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for more than three seconds, press **RES** or the accelerator pedal to follow the vehicle ahead.

Note: *The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.*

Setting the Gap Distance



You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.

Note: *It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.*



The selected gap appears in the information display as shown by the bars in the image. You can select four gap settings.

Cruise Control

Adaptive Cruise Control Distance Between Vehicle Settings

Set Speed km/h (mph)	Graphic Display - Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Time Gap - Seconds	Distance Gap m (yd)	Dynamic Behavior
100 (62)	1	1	28 (31)	Sport.
100 (62)	2	1.4	39 (43)	Normal.
100 (62)	3	1.8	50 (55)	Normal.
100 (62)	4	2.2	61 (67)	Comfort.

When you switch the ignition on, the system selects the last chosen gap setting.

Overriding the System



WARNING: If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the vehicle graphic disappears from the information display.

Changing the Set Speed



Press the toggle button upward to increase the set speed.



Press the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed.

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

The system may apply the brakes to slow your vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed continuously displays in the information display when the system is active.

Canceling the Set Speed



Press the button once or tap the brake pedal.

The last set speed displays with a strikethrough and the last gap setting appears but does not erase.

Cruise Control

Resuming the Set Speed

RES

Press the button.

The vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed continuously shows in the information display when the system is active.

Note: Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.

Automatic Cancellation



WARNING: When your vehicle is stationary and automatic cancellation occurs, a warning tone sounds and the brakes are released. Apply the brakes to keep your vehicle stationary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

The system cancels if any of the following occur:

- You apply the parking brake.
- You unfasten the seatbelt if your vehicle is stationary.

- Your vehicle remains stationary for longer than three minutes.
- The tires lose traction.

Hilly Condition Usage

Select a lower gear when the system is active and you are driving downhill on steep grades, for example in mountainous areas. The system needs additional engine braking in these situations to reduce the load on the brake system to prevent it from overheating.

Note: A tone sounds and the system turns off if it applies brakes for an extended period of time. This allows the brakes to cool. The system operates after the brakes cool.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off



Press the button once with the system in standby mode.

Note: The set speed erases when you switch the system off.

Detection Issues



WARNING: On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

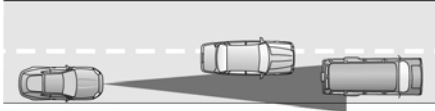


WARNING: If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

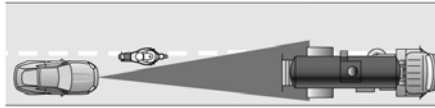
The radar has a limited field of view. It does not detect all vehicles in all situations and could detect vehicles later than that you expect. The lead vehicle graphic does not display if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

Cruise Control

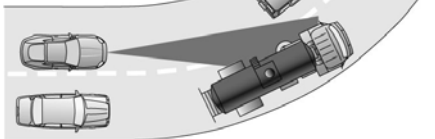
A



B



C



E71621

Detection issues can occur:

- A When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they fully move into your lane.
- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. You should stay alert and take action when necessary.

If something hits the front of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection

System Not Available

- A blocked sensor.
- High brake temperature.
- A failure in the system or a related system.
- The system does not detect a lead vehicle after you stop, or driving at low speeds.

Adaptive Cruise Control System Sensors



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



E243054

The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.

Cruise Control



E244279

The radar is behind the front grille below the license plate.

A message displays if something obstructs the radar signals from the sensor. The system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function when something blocks the sensor.

Note: You cannot see the sensor, it is behind a fascia panel.


Note: Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar in the radiator grille is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the radiator grille in front of the radar or remove any obstruction.
The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that it is free from obstruction.
Heavy rain or snow interfere with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
Swirling water, snow or ice on the surface of the road interfere with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
You are in a desert or remote area with no other vehicles and no roadside objects.	Wait for a short period of time or switch to normal cruise control.

Cruise Control

Due to the nature of radar technology, a blocked sensor message could display when the sensor is not blocked. This can happen, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition self clears or clears after you switch the ignition off and on.

Switching to Normal Cruise Control

**WARNING:** Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

You can change from adaptive cruise control to cruise control using the information display.

To switch between adaptive cruise control and normal cruise control, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Driver assist.	Press the menu button.
Cruise control	Press the OK button.
Mode	Press the OK button. Press the toggle button upward or downward to choose your required setting. Press the OK button.



The cruise control indicator replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, the system does not automatically respond to lead vehicles and adaptive braking does not activate. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Adaptive Cruise Control Indicator



The indicator appears when you switch the system on.

The indicator appears in the information display when the system is in standby mode and when you set the adaptive cruise speed.

Cruise Control

Adaptive Cruise Control Information Messages

Message	Action
Adaptive cruise control not available Sensor blocked See manual	The radar has reduced visibility.
Adaptive cruise control not available	The system is not available.
Adaptive cruise control malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Adaptive cruise control Speed too low to activate	You have switched the system on when your vehicle speed is too low.
Cruise control active Adaptive braking off	You have switched normal cruise control on. Adaptive braking turns off.

Adaptive Cruise Control With Speed Sign Recognition (If Equipped)



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

The system combines speed sign recognition with adaptive cruise control. The system allows you to set the vehicle speed to the speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. For example, if the speed sign recognition system detects a 80 km/h (50 mph) speed limit, the vehicle speed is set to 80 km/h (50 mph).

Note: *The system does not set the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign in the information display.*

Note: *You can override the set speed at any time.*

Note: *The adaptive cruise control gap setting normally operates.*

Switching Between the Cruise Control Modes

You can change between the cruise control modes using the information display.

Cruise Control

To switch between the cruise control modes, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Driver assist.	Press the menu button.
Cruise control	Press the OK button.
Mode	Press the OK button. Press the toggle button upward or downward to choose your required setting. Press the OK button.

Intelligent Mode



E265663

If you select this mode, a bracket appears around the set speed and the detected speed limit sign in the information display. The system is designed to set the vehicle speed to the speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system before your vehicle passes the speed limit sign.

Under certain conditions, the system may not adjust the vehicle speed until after your vehicle passes the speed limit sign.

Note: *The set speed adjusts when the system detects a different maximum speed limit.*

If the system does not detect a speed limit, the vehicle speed remains at the current set speed.

Automatic Cancellation

If the speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit below the minimum adaptive cruise control set speed, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

Adjusting the Set Speed Tolerance Settings

You can set a permanent speed tolerance that is above or below the detected speed limit through the tolerance menu in the information display.

Cruise Control

To adjust the speed tolerance setting, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu item	Description and action
Driver assist.	Press the menu button.
Cruise control	Press the OK button.
Tolerance	Press the OK button. Press the toggle button upward or downward to choose your required speed setting. Press the OK button.

Adaptive Mode

If you select this mode, adaptive cruise control operates with manual set speed input. The system does not set the vehicle speed to the speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system.

Normal Mode

If you select this mode, normal cruise control operates. The gap setting does not display, the system does not automatically respond to lead vehicles and adaptive braking does not activate.

Adaptive Cruise Control With Speed Sign Recognition Information Messages

Message	Action
Adaptive cruise control Speed sign recognition not available	Navigation system based speed limit information is not available. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Driving Aids

SPEED LIMITER

Principle of Operation



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.



WARNING: The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

The system allows you to set a speed to which your vehicle becomes limited. The set speed sets the effective maximum speed of your vehicle. You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

Using Speed Limiter

The controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching the System On and Off

LIM

Press to set the system in standby mode. Press again to switch the system off.

Setting the Speed Limiter

SET+

Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed.

SET-

The set speed is stored and displayed in the information

display.

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

Canceling the Set Speed

CAN

Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

Resuming the Set Speed

RES

Press to resume the set speed limiter.

Intentionally Exceeding the Speed Limit

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit. The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, or when you press the **RES** button.

System Warnings

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning appears in the information display.

If you unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill, a warning appears in the information display and a tone sounds.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER

Principle of Operation



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

Driving Aids



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

The system allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. For example, if the speed sign recognition system detects a 80 km/h (50 mph) speed limit, the vehicle speed is limited to 80 km/h (50 mph). You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

Note: The system does not limit the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign in the information display.

Using Intelligent Speed Limiter

The controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching the System On or Off

LIM

Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the detected speed-limit or, if no speed-limit is detected, the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again to switch the system off.

Setting the Speed Limiter

SET+

Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed.

SET-

The set speed is stored and displayed in the information display.

Note: The set speed limiter adjusts when the system detects a different maximum speed limit.

Note: If the system cannot detect a maximum speed limit, the system returns to standby mode.

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

Canceling the Set Speed

CAN

Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

Note: The speed limiter icon and the set speed indicator are greyed out in standby mode.

Note: The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.

Resuming the Set Speed

RES

Press to resume the set speed limiter. The system sets the speed limiter to the detected maximum speed limit at the time it resumes.

Intentionally Exceeding the Speed Limit

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit. The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, or when you press the **RES** button.

Driving Aids

System Warnings

A warning appears in the information display if any of the following occur:

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.

- You intentionally exceed the set speed.
- You unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill. A tone also sounds.

Note: *A tone sounds if you continue to exceed the set speed.*

Note: *If the speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit outside the operational speed range, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.*

Adjusting Intelligent Speed Limiter Tolerance Settings

You can set a permanent speed tolerance that is in addition to the detected speed limit through the tolerance menu in the information display.

To adjust the speed tolerance setting, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Driver assist.	Press the menu button.
Speed limiter	Press the OK button.
Intelligent	Press the OK button.
Tolerance	Press the OK button. Press the toggle button upward or downward to choose your required speed setting. Press the OK button.

Driving Aids

Switching to Normal Speed Limiter

You can change between intelligent speed limiter and normal speed limiter using the information display. Intelligent speed limiter

allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. Normal speed limiter allows you to manually limit the vehicle speed using controls on the steering wheel.

To switch between intelligent speed limiter and normal speed limiter, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Driver assist.	Press the menu button.
Speed limiter	Press the OK button.
Intelligent	Press the OK button.

Note: *If you switch intelligent speed limiter off, the system defaults to manual speed limiter. You can manually set the speed limiter using the controls on the steering wheel.*

DRIVER ALERT



WARNING: The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.



WARNING: At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



WARNING: Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.



WARNING: Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

Driving Aids



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

The system is designed to alert you if it detects that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates. The system calculates your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

You can switch the system on or off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 113).

Note: The system remains on or off depending on how it was last set.

System Warnings

The warning system has two stages:

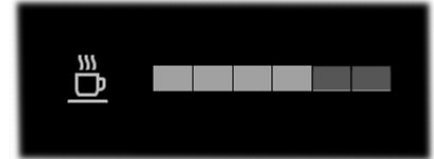
1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the information display until you cancel it. See **Information Messages** (page 118).

Note: The system does not warn you if the vehicle speed falls below approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

System Display

Your calculated alertness level is shown by six steps as a colored bar. The bar travels from right to left as your calculated alertness level decreases.

You can view the status at any time using the information display. See **General Information** (page 113).



E249476

Your calculated alertness level is good.



E249477

Your calculated alertness level is low. You should stop your vehicle and take a rest as soon as it is safe to do so.

Your calculated alertness level shows in gray if:

- The sensor cannot track the road lane markings.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

Driving Aids

Resetting the System

You can reset the system by:

- Switching the ignition off and on when your vehicle is stationary.
- Opening and closing the driver door when your vehicle is stationary.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

The system is designed to alert you by providing temporary steering assistance or steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure. The system detects and tracks the road lane markings using a camera mounted behind the interior mirror. The system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph). You can view the system status in the information display.

Note: *The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.*

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The system does not detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.
- You switch the direction indicator on.
- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- The vehicle speed is less than 65 km/h (40 mph).
- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- Narrow lane width.

Driving Aids

The system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

Switching Lane Keeping System On and Off



E270719

Press the button on the direction indicator stalk.

Lane Keeping System Settings

The system has different settings that you can view or adjust using the information display.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle. If the system detects a MyKey, the mode is set to alert.

Alert Mode

Provides steering wheel vibration when the system detects an unintended lane departure.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel Vibration Intensity

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist..**
2. Select **Lane keeping system.**
3. Select **Intensity.**
4. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

Note: This setting does not affect the aid mode.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Adjusting the Lane Keeping System Sensitivity

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist..**
2. Select **Lane keeping system.**
3. Select **Sensitivity.**
4. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

Aid Mode

Provides temporary steering assistance toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure.

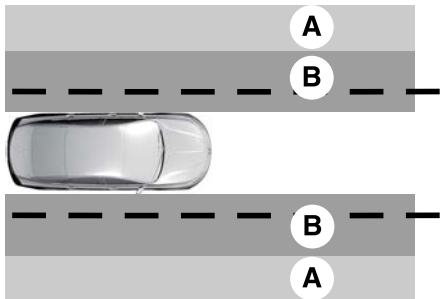
Note: When aid mode is on and the system does not detect any steering activity for a short period of time, for example lightly holding the steering wheel, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel.

Note: The aid mode becomes active again after you have returned your vehicle to the center of the lane.

Alert and Aid Mode

Provides temporary steering assistance toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure. If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane, the steering wheel vibrates.

Driving Aids



- A Alert mode.
B Aid mode.

Note: The diagram illustrates general zone coverage. It does not provide exact zone parameters.

Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist..**
2. Select **Lane keeping system.**
3. Select **Mode.**
4. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

Lane Keeping System Display



When the system is off, the system indicator or the lane markings do not display.

Lane Keeping System Indicators



It illuminates in the information display when you switch the system on and Aid Mode or Alert and Aid Mode are selected.



It illuminates in the information display when you switch the system on and Alert Mode is selected.

Black and White Information Display

Indicator	System Status
Gray.	Unavailable.
White.	Available.
White and inverted.	Temporary steering assistance.
White and flashing.	Temporary steering assistance and steering wheel vibration.

Driving Aids

Color Information Display

Indicator	System Status
Gray.	Unavailable.
Green.	Available.
Amber.	Temporary steering assistance.
Red.	Temporary steering assistance and steering wheel vibration.

Lane Keeping System Warning Lamp



It could illuminate when you switch the system off. If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Lane Keeping System Messages

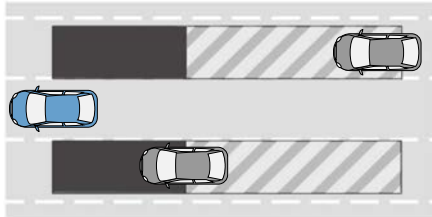
Message	Action
Lane keeping system malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Driving Aids

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

WARNING: Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



The system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m (13 ft) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 18 m (59 ft) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 48 km/h (30 mph) to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.

Note: *The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.*

Using the Blind Spot Information System

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

Note: *The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).*

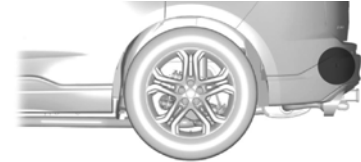
Vehicles with Manual Transmission

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

Note: *The system does not operate in reverse (R).*

Blind Spot Information System Sensors



E205199

The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

E255695

Driving Aids

Note: Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the information display. The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

Switching the Blind Spot Information System On and Off

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver assistance**.
3. Switch **BLIS** on or off.

If you switch the system off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

Blind Spot Information System Indicator



When the system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the direction indicator on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

If the system detects a fault, an indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the information display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: The system may not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.

Blind Spot Information System Information Messages

Message	Action
BLIS not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
BLIS deactivated Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
BLIS malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Driving Aids

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT



WARNING: Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

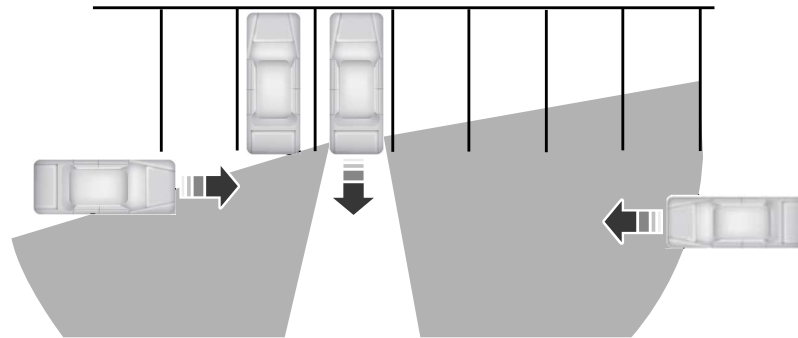
The system is designed to alert you of vehicles approaching from the sides when you shift into reverse (R).

Using the Cross Traffic Alert System

The system is designed to detect vehicles that approach with a speed up to 60 km/h (37 mph). Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed. Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

The system turns on when you start the engine and you shift into reverse (R). The system turns off when you shift out of reverse (R).

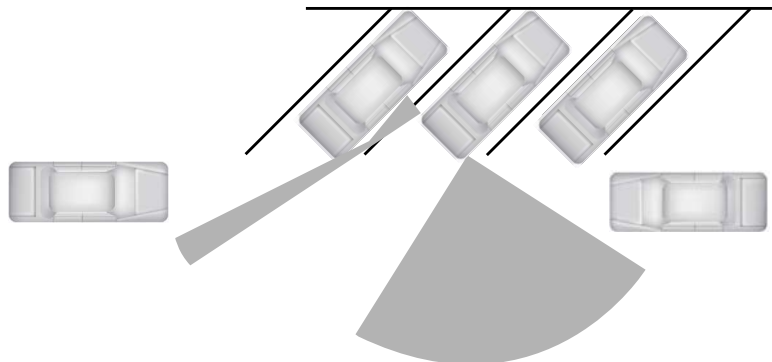
Driving Aids



E142440

The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.

Driving Aids



E142441

Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

Driving Aids

System Lights, Messages and Audible Alerts

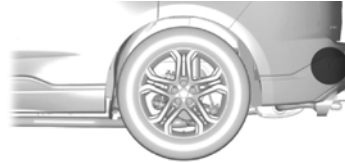


E142442

When the system detects a vehicle, an indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. A tone sounds and a message appears in the information display.

Note: *In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing in the distance.*

Blocked Sensors



E205199

The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

Note: *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the information display when you shift into reverse (R). See **Information Messages** (page 118).

System Limitations

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- The sensors are blocked.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Vehicles approach at speeds greater than 60 km/h (37 mph).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 12 km/h (7 mph).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

System Errors

If the system detects a fault a message displays. See **General Information** (page 113).

Switching the System Off and On

You can temporarily switch the system off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 113). When you switch system off, a message displays. See **Information Messages** (page 118).

Driving Aids

Note: The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on and you shift into reverse (R). If you temporarily switch the system off, it turns on the next time you switch the ignition on.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

Principle of Operation



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

The system is designed to detect traffic signs to inform you of the current speed limit and overtaking regulations. Detected traffic signs appear in the information display. The sensor is behind the interior mirror.

Note: Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.

Note: Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.

The system detects recognizable traffic signs, for example:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.
- No overtaking cancellation signs.

Note: The system may not detect all traffic signs and may incorrectly read signs.

Note: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from correctly functioning.

Note: If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not correctly function.

Note: Always fit Ford original parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on and you cannot switch the system off.

Using Traffic Sign Recognition

Setting the System Speed Warning

You can set the system speed warning to alert you when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system by a certain speed tolerance.

Driving Aids

To switch the system speed warning on or off, or to adjust the speed warning settings, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Driver assist.	Press the menu button.
Traffic sign recognition	Press the OK button.
Activate speed warning	Press the OK button.
Speed warning	Press the menu button.
Tolerance	Press the OK button. Press the toggle button upward or downward to choose your required speed setting. Press the OK button.
Overspeed chime	Press the OK button.

Traffic Sign Recognition System Display



The system can display two traffic signs in parallel.

You can view the status at any time using the information display.

The system displays recognizable traffic signs in four stages as follows:

1. All new traffic signs appear brighter than the others in the display.
2. After a predetermined time they display normally.

3. After a predetermined distance they are greyed out.

4. After another predetermined distance they are deleted.

If the system detects a supplementary traffic sign, it displays below the respective traffic sign. For example, when passing a reduced speed limit in wet road conditions sign.

Note: If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.

Driving Aids

Traffic Sign Recognition System Messages

Message	Action
Traffic sign recognition Reduced performance See manual	The traffic sign data provided by the navigation system is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION

Principle of Operation



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

The system is designed to detect speed limit signs to inform you of the current speed limit. Detected speed signs appear in the information display. The sensor is behind the interior mirror.

Note: Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.

Note: Speed sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.

Note: The system may not detect all speed signs and may incorrectly read signs.

Note: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from correctly functioning.

Note: If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not correctly function.

Note: Always fit Ford original parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on and you cannot switch the system off.

Using Speed Sign Recognition

Setting the System Speed Warning

You can set the system speed warning to alert you when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system by a certain speed tolerance.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist..**
2. Select **Traffic sign recognition.**
3. Select **Activate Traff. Sign Recog..**
4. Select **Activate speed warning.**

Driving Aids

- 5. Select **Speed warning**.
- 6. Select **Tolerance**.
- 7. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

Speed Sign Recognition System Display



When the system detects a speed limit sign, the speed limit appears in the information display.

Note: *If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored speed sign data could influence the indicated speed limit value.*

Speed Sign Recognition System Messages

Message	Action
Traffic sign recognition Reduced performance See manual	The traffic sign data provided by the navigation system is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Driving Aids

ECO

Eco Mode

How Does Eco Mode Work

The system is designed to monitor certain driving characteristics to help you drive more efficiently. See **Economical Driving** (page 273).

Note: The efficiency levels do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure. See **Fuel Consumption** (page 181).

Note: The system only indicates the efficiency level for the current trip. The system resets each time you switch the ignition on.

Instantaneous Efficiency Level

The display ring increases as the instantaneous efficiency level increases and illuminates when it reaches maximum efficiency. The level continuously updates to indicate the efficiency level for the current trip.

Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency Level

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **MyView**.
2. Select **Eco coach**.

Trip Summary

The calculated trip summary is shown as four colored bars. The bars travel from left to right as the calculated efficiency levels increase. The bars indicate the average efficiency level for acceleration, deceleration, speed and gear shifting during the total distance traveled by your vehicle for the current trip.

Note: Vehicles with an automatic transmission do not have a bar for gear shifting.

Viewing the Trip Summary

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **MyView**.
2. Select **Eco coach**.

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.



WARNING: The system may fail or operate with reduced function during cold and severe weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if your vehicle has a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in the area around the sensor.



WARNING: In situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability, this may reduce system performance. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians

Driving Aids

with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians, partly obscured pedestrians, or pedestrians that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: The Pre-Collision Assist system with brake support cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace your judgment and the need to maintain correct distance and speed.

The pre-collision assist system is active when your vehicle reaches a speed greater than approximately 5 km/h (3 mph). Pedestrian detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h (50 mph).

Note: *The system is not designed to detect animals.*

Note: *The system is not designed to detect vehicles or cyclists that are traveling in a different direction.*



E156130

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle or cyclist traveling in the same direction as yours, or a pedestrian within your driving path, the system is designed to provide three levels of functionality.

Level of Functionality	Description
Alert	When activated, a warning lamp flashes and an audible warning sounds.
Brake support	The system is designed to help reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system could apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.
Active braking - vehicles without adaptive cruise control	The system is designed to apply the brakes if it detects a crash is imminent. This may help reduce impact or avoid the crash. The system is active at speeds up to 130 km/h (80 mph).
Active braking - vehicles with adaptive cruise control	The system is designed to apply the brakes if it detects a crash is imminent. This may help reduce impact or avoid the crash.

Driving Aids

To switch active braking on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Driver assist.	Press the menu button.
Pre-collision Assist	Press the OK button.
Active braking	Press the OK button.

Distance Alert (If Equipped)

A warning lamp illuminates if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.

Note: *The warning lamp does not illuminate if cruise control or adaptive cruise control is active.*

Distance Alert Sensitivity Settings

To adjust the distance alert sensitivity settings, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Driver assist.	Press the menu button.
Pre-collision Assist	Press the OK button.
Alert sensitivity	Press the OK button. Press the toggle button upward or downward to choose your required setting. Press the OK button.

Driving Aids

Distance Indication (If Equipped)

A graphical indication displays the time gap

to vehicles ahead of you traveling in the same direction.

Note: *The graphic does not display if you switch on cruise control or adaptive cruise control.*

Vehicle Speed	System Sensitivity	Distance Indicator Color	Distance Gap	Time Gap
100 km/h (62 mph)	Normal.	Gray.	Greater than 25 m (82.0 ft)	Greater than 0.9 seconds.
		Yellow.	17–25 m (55.8–82.0 ft).	0.6–0.9 seconds.
		Red.	Less than 17 m (55.8 ft).	Less than 0.6 seconds.

Switching Distance Indication On or Off

To switch distance indication on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Driver assist.	Press the menu button.
Pre-collision Assist	Press the OK button.
Distance indication	Press the OK button.

Driving Aids

Pre-Collision Assist System Sensors

Vehicles without Adaptive Cruise Control



E243054

The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message may appear in the information display.

Vehicles with Adaptive Cruise Control



E243054

The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



E244279

The radar sensor is behind the front grille below the license plate.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message may appear in the information display.

Pre-Collision Assist Warning Lamp



It illuminates if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

It could illuminate red if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.

It illuminates when the system is not available.

Driving Aids

Pre-Collision Assist Information Messages

Message	Action
Pre-collision assist not available	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Pre-collision assist not available Sensor blocked	The sensors are dirty. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The following table lists possible causes and actions for when a blocked sensor message may display.

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar in the radiator grille is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the radiator grille in front of the radar or remove any obstruction.
The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the system to detect that there is no obstruction.
Heavy rain, spray, snow, or fog is interfering with the radar signals.	The system is temporarily disabled. The system should reactivate after a short period of time when the weather conditions improve.
The radar is misaligned.	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.
The windshield in front of the camera is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.
Excessive heat around the camera.	Wait for a short period of time. The message should clear when the temperature around the camera decreases.

Driving Aids

DRIVE CONTROL

Selectable Drive Modes

Your vehicle has various drive modes that you can select for different driving conditions. Depending on the drive mode that you select, the system adjusts various vehicle settings, for example steering, gear shifting, handling and powertrain response.

Selecting a Drive Mode

The button is on the center console.



Repeatedly press the button to scroll through the available drive modes.



Note: Some drive modes cannot be selected when using a MyKey.

Normal



Vehicle settings suited for balanced driving.

Note: This is the default mode each time you switch the ignition on.

Eco



Vehicle settings suited for economical driving.

Slippery



Vehicle settings suited for driving on slippery roads.

Sport



Vehicle settings suited for sportier driving.

Note: Auto-start-stop switches off when you select this mode.

Trail



Vehicle settings suited for driving on unpaved roads.

Track



Vehicle settings suited for track driving.

Note: Auto-start-stop switches off when you select this mode.

Note: Pre-Collision Assist is disabled when you select this mode.

Note: Lane Keeping System is disabled when you select this mode.

Note: Track mode is not intended for use on public roads.

Note: Stability Control is adapted for track use when you select this mode.

Efficient Drive Mode

WHAT IS EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE

Efficient drive mode is a predictive coach that provides near real-time traffic information to help you drive more efficiently by releasing the accelerator pedal.

SWITCHING EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE ON AND OFF

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist..**
2. Select **Eco coach**.
3. Switch **Eco advice** on or off.

DISPLAYING THE EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist..**

The display ring can provide information about speed limit, freeway ramp, slope, curve, crosswalk, etc.

TRIP SUMMARY

How Does Trip Summary Work

The calculated trip summary is shown as five colored bars. The bars travel from left to right as the calculated efficiency levels increase. The bars indicate the average efficiency level for acceleration, deceleration, speed, gear shifting and compliance score during the total distance traveled by your vehicle for both last and current trips.

Note: Vehicles with an automatic transmission do not have a bar for gear shifting.

Viewing the Trip Summary

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **MyView**.
2. Select **Eco coach**.
3. Switch the engine off.
4. Press the **OK** button.

EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE INDICATORS



It indicates that you have to slowly decelerate.

Current Highway Information

WHAT IS CURRENT HIGHWAY INFORMATION

The system is designed to provide near real-time information about the road in front of you.

2. Select **Information**.
3. Select **Local hazard information**.

ENABLING CURRENT HIGHWAY INFORMATION

Note: Make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 387).

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Connectivity settings**.
4. Switch **Vehicle connectivity** on.
5. Switch **Location** on.
6. Switch **Vehicle data & Remote ctrl** on.
7. Switch **Live Traffic** on.
8. Switch **Local hazard information** on.

CHECKING CURRENT HIGHWAY INFORMATION STATUS

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.

Load Carrying

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING: Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

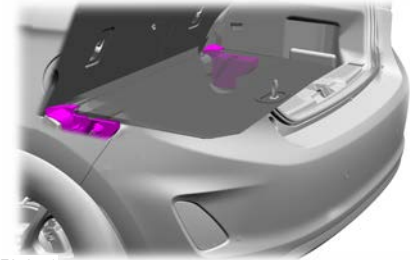
Note: When loading long objects into your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture be careful not to damage the interior trim.

REAR UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

Adjustable Load Floor

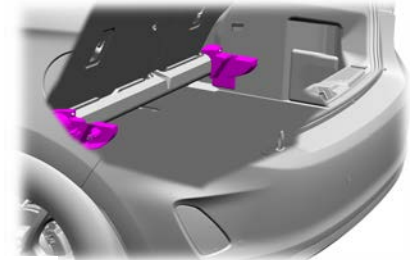
The adjustable load floor can be held open or placed in the upper or lower positions within the luggage compartment.

In the upper position, place it on top of the floor supports.



E270441

In the lower position, slide it into the lower slot in the floor supports.



E270440

To hold the load floor open, raise and slide into the angled slots in the floor supports behind rear seats.

Load Carrying

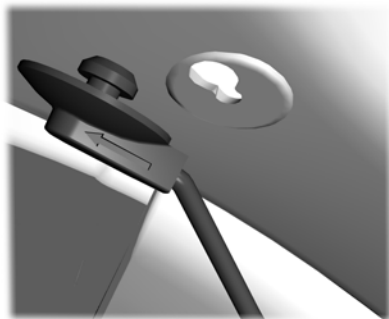
LUGGAGE COVERS



WARNING: Do not load any objects on the shelf that may obstruct your vision or strike occupants of the vehicle in the case of a sudden stop or collision.

Removing the Cover

To remove the luggage cover:



E266421

1. Gently push the retaining clip up and remove it.

2. Raise the luggage cover.
3. Pull the luggage cover backward.

ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PANORAMIC ROOF OPENING PANEL



WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.



WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

The maximum recommended load, evenly distributed on the roof rack is 50 kg (110 lb).

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

Note: *Never place loads directly on the roof panel.*

Towbar Carriers

When using a towbar attached carrier, consider the following:

- Do not exceed the maximum vertical weight on the towball. This is the weight of the carrier plus the weight of the load. See **Towbar Dimensions** (page 364).
- Pay attention to the carrier manufacturer's specifications.
- Load the heaviest item closest to your vehicle.

ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS - VEHICLES WITH: PANORAMIC ROOF OPENING PANEL



WARNING: Your vehicle is not approved for roof racks. Never install a roof rack to your vehicle.

Load Carrying


Towbar Carriers


When using a towbar attached carrier, consider the following:


- Do not exceed the maximum vertical weight on the towball. This is the weight of the carrier plus the weight of the load. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 363).
- Pay attention to the carrier manufacturer's specifications.
- If you are using a bike carrier, the maximum number of allowed bikes is three, with a maximum allowed weight of 130 lb (60 kg).
- Load the heaviest item closest to your vehicle.


Towing


TOWING A TRAILER - EXCLUDING: ST


 **WARNING:** Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The rear tire pressures must be increased by 0.2 bar (3 psi) above specification. Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the tire sidewall. This could cause serious personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of your vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum vertical load on the tow ball. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

When towing a trailer:

- Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.
- Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.
- Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unloaded vehicle, you should place the load in your trailer toward the front, within the maximum vertical load, as this gives the best stability. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 363).
- The trailer vertical weight on the tow ball is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.

- The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 363).
- Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying.
- Use a low gear when descending a steep slope.

Note: We recommend that you use a trailer safety cable. Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you use a trailer safety cable.

Note: The maximum permissible trailer vertical weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer vertical weight may be lower.

The stability of your vehicle-to-trailer combination depends on the quality of the trailer.

Towing a trailer changes the handling characteristics of your vehicle and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behaviour to the load of the trailer.

Towing

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% and altitudes up to 1,000 m (3,281 ft) when towing a trailer. In mountainous regions the engine performance decreases due to lower air density with increasing altitude. In high altitude regions above 1,000 m (3,281 ft), you should reduce the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight by 10% for every additional 1,000 m (3,281 ft).

Note: *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have a tow bar fitted. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

TOWING A TRAILER - ST

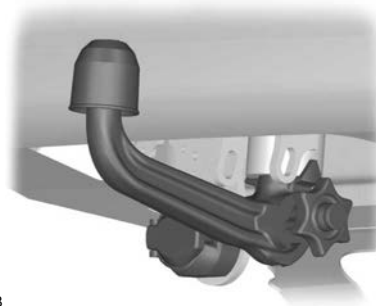
WARNING: Your vehicle is not approved for trailer towing. Never tow a trailer with your vehicle.

TOW BALL

WARNING: Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.

Do not disassemble or repair the tow ball arm.



E71328

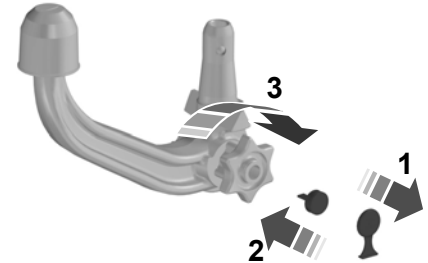
Detaching the Tow Ball Arm

WARNING: Always place the tow ball arm in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile in a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

You must detach the tow ball arm when not in use. We recommend that you securely stow the tow ball arm in the luggage compartment.

Do not use any tools to detach the tow ball arm.

Never unlock or detach the tow ball arm with a trailer attached.



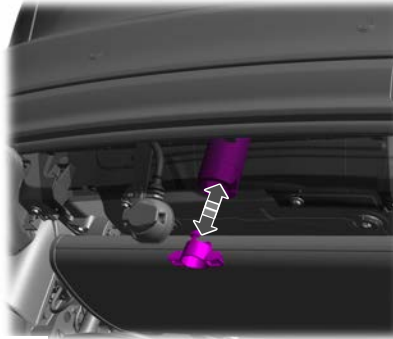
E71329

Towing

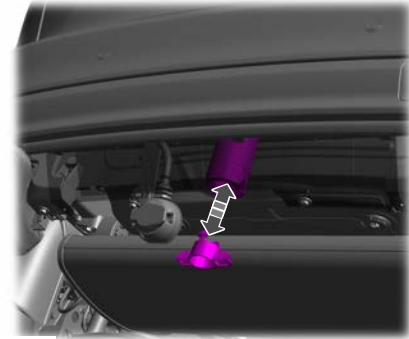
1. Remove the protective cap.
2. Insert the key and turn it counterclockwise to unlock the handwheel.
3. Hold the tow ball arm. Pull the handwheel outward and turn it fully clockwise until it clicks.

Note: The red mark on the handwheel must align with the white dot on the tow ball arm.

4. Release the handwheel.
5. Pull the tow ball arm downward to remove it.
6. Turn the trailer wiring connection socket upward through 90° until it engages in the end position.



E265433



E265433

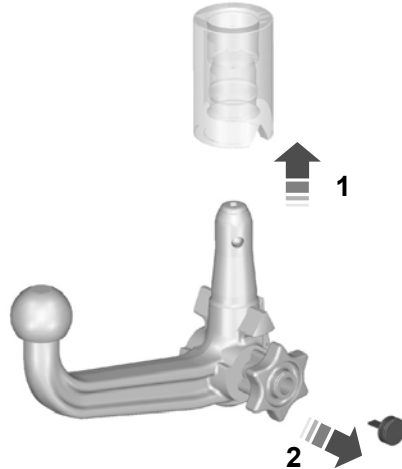
7. Insert the blanking plug.

Attaching the Tow Ball Arm

Do not use any tools to attach the tow ball arm.

Note: You can only attach the tow ball arm if it is unlocked.

Towing



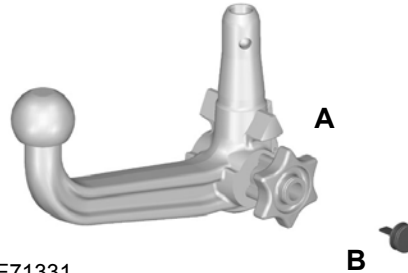
E71330

1. Remove the blanking plug and fully insert the tow ball arm until it engages.

Note: Do not place your hand near the handwheel.

Note: The green mark on the handwheel must align with the white dot on the tow ball arm.

2. Insert the key and turn it clockwise to lock the handwheel.
3. Fit the protective cap. Fully push it back over the lock.
4. Turn the trailer wiring connection socket downward through 90° until it engages in the end position.



E71331

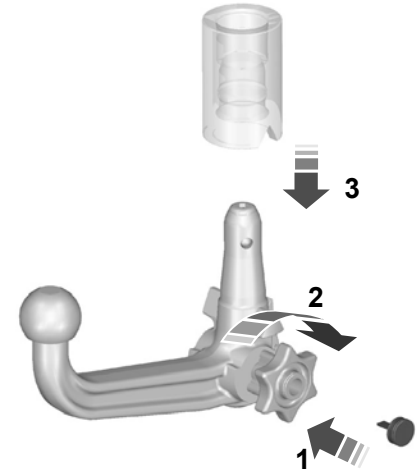
Check the following:

- The green mark on the handwheel is aligned with the white dot on the tow ball arm.
- The handwheel (A) is locked.
- You have removed the key (B).

Note: If any of these cannot be met, do not use the tow ball arm. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Quickly Detaching the Tow Ball Arm

Never unlock or detach the tow ball arm with a trailer attached.



E71332

1. Remove the protective cap. Insert the key and turn it counterclockwise to unlock the handwheel.

Towing

2. Hold the tow ball arm. Pull the handwheel outward and turn it clockwise against the stop.
3. Pull the tow ball arm downward to remove it.
4. Release the handwheel.
5. Insert the blanking plug.

Quickly Attaching the Tow Ball Arm

When the tow ball arm is quickly detached, it can be quickly reattached.

1. Remove the blanking plug and fully insert the tow ball arm until it engages.

Note: Do not place your hand near the handwheel.

Note: The green mark on the handwheel must align with the white dot on the tow ball arm.

2. Insert the key and turn it clockwise to lock the handwheel.
3. Fit the protective cap. Fully push it back over the lock.

Tow Ball Arm Guidelines

- Replacement keys are available. We recommend that you record the key number on the lock cylinder.
- Keep the system clean. Periodically lubricate bearings, sliding surfaces and locking balls with resin-free grease or oil. Lubricate the lock with graphite.
- Remove the trailer wiring plug from the trailer wiring connection socket when not in use. Failure to do so may result in corrosion of the trailer wiring connection socket. Clean the trailer wiring connection socket regularly and make sure the socket cover is fully closed.
- If you use a high pressure water jet to clean your vehicle, disconnect the trailer wiring plug. Do not aim the water jet directly at the trailer wiring connection socket. We recommend that you detach the tow ball arm before washing your vehicle.

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - MANUAL TRANSMISSION



WARNING: You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed. Failure to follow this warning could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



WARNING: The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.



WARNING: If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.



WARNING: Too much tension on a tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.



WARNING: When towing your vehicle you must select neutral. Failure to follow this warning could damage the transmission and may lead to a crash or injury.

Towing

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle. See **Towing Points** (page 279).


Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example; right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.


You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.


The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.


Do not exceed 50 km/h (31 mph). See **Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels** (page 270).


TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION


 **WARNING:** You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed. Failure to follow this warning could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.


 **WARNING:** You must make sure the transmission selector lever is placed in position **N**. Failure to follow this warning could damage the transmission and may lead to a crash or injury.

 **WARNING:** The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and allow for increased stopping distances and heavier steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

 **WARNING:** If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock, make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position before you tow.

 **WARNING:** Too much tension on a tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

 **WARNING:** Do not tow your vehicle if the ambient temperature is below 0°C (32°F).

 **WARNING:** Do not tow your vehicle backward.

Emergency Towing

If your vehicle is disabled without access to wheel dollies, a car-hauling trailer, or a flatbed transport vehicle it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground. You may do this under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so that it is towed in a forward direction.
- The transmission selector lever is placed in position **N**. If the transmission gear shift lever cannot be moved to position **N**, it may need to be overridden. See **Automatic Transmission** (page 192).
- Maximum speed is 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Maximum distance is 80 km (50 mi).

Towing

Note: *If you need to exceed a speed of 50 km/h (30 mph) and a distance of 80 km (50 mi) while towing, you must lift the drive wheels clear of the ground.*

Note: *We recommend you do not tow with the drive wheels on the ground. However, if it is required to move the vehicle from a dangerous location, do not tow your vehicle faster than 50 km/h (30 mph) or farther than 80 km (50 mi).*



WARNING: In the event of a mechanical failure of the transmission, do not use individual axle carriers. All wheels must be lifted clear of the ground on a level platform.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle that is being towed.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle. See **Towing Points** (page 279).

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example; right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

Note: *Using a rigid towing bar is the safest way to tow a vehicle.*

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

Driving Hints

ECONOMICAL DRIVING

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure. See **Tire Pressures** (page 346).
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off.
- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.

- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below -25°C (-13°F).

BREAKING-IN

Tires

New tires need to be run-in for approximately 500 km (300 mi). During this time, you may experience different driving characteristics.

Brakes and Clutch

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 150 km (100 mi) in town and for the first 1,500 km (1,000 mi) on freeways.

Engine

Avoid driving too fast during the first 1,500 km (1,000 mi). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

Vehicles With a Diesel Engine

During the first 3,000 km (2,000 mi), you may notice a ticking sound when your vehicle slows down. This is due to adjustments of your new diesel engine and is normal.

DRIVING THROUGH WATER



WARNING: Do not drive through flowing or deep water as you may lose control of your vehicle.

Note: *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

Note: *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.

Driving Hints



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction may be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the exterior lights work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

ENGINE OVERSPEED

Note: Always wait until the engine is properly warmed up before running high engine speeds.

Your ST vehicle is equipped with an overspeed feature to increase its performance range. The standard maximum engine speed of 6300 RPM is indicated by a narrow redline on the tachometer face. The redline becomes thicker at the overspeed engine speed of 6600 RPM.

This feature allows one second of overspeed above 6300 RPM. Once the one second limit has been reached, the electronically controlled rev limit ramps down to 6300 RPM and holds there. Once engine speed has dropped below 6100 RPM, the overspeed timer is reset and one second of overspeed up to a maximum of 6600 RPM is enabled.

Do not operate the engine at high RPM and low load for sustained periods of time, as damage may occur.

FLOOR MATS

WARNING: Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

WARNING: Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

Driving Hints



To install the floor mats, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

Note: *Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.*

Roadside Emergencies

HAZARD FLASHERS



The hazard flasher switch is on the instrument panel.

Use the hazard flashers if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

Switching the Hazard Flashers On or Off



Press the button to switch the hazard flashers on.

Press the button again to switch the hazard flashers off.

Note: All direction indicators flash.

Note: Prolonged use of the hazard flashers could cause the vehicle battery to run out of charge.

Note: Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, if you heavily brake, the hazard flashers could turn on.

Hazard Flasher Indicator



Flashes when you switch the hazard flashers on.

FIRST AID KIT

Space is provided in the luggage compartment.

WARNING TRIANGLE

Space is provided in the luggage compartment.

FUEL SHUTOFF



WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle includes a fuel pump shutoff feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shutoff.

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision, you may restart your vehicle. For vehicles equipped with a key system:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Switch to start position.

3. Switch off the ignition.
4. Switch on the ignition to re-enable the fuel pump.

For vehicles equipped with a push button start system:

1. Press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
2. Press the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch on the ignition.
3. Remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
4. You can either attempt to start the engine by pressing the brake pedal and the **START/STOP** button, or switch on the ignition only by pressing the **START/STOP** button without pressing the brake pedal. Both ways re-enable the fuel system.

Note: When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once your vehicle determines that the systems are safe, then the vehicle will allow you to restart.

Note: In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact an authorized dealer.

Roadside Emergencies

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE



WARNING: Do not use fuel lines, engine valve covers, windshield wiper arms, the intake manifold, or hood latch as ground points.



WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.

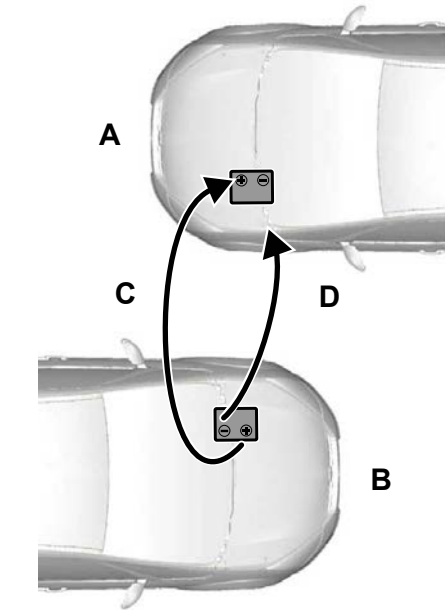


WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

Note: *Do not disconnect the battery from your vehicle's electrical system.*

Roadside Emergencies

To Connect the Booster Cables

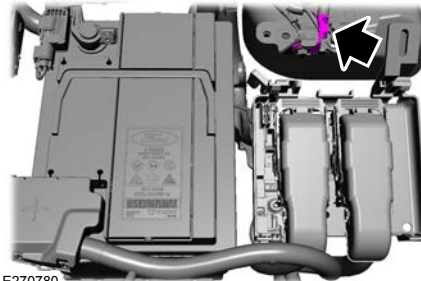


E102925

A Vehicle with low charge battery

- B Booster battery vehicle
- C Positive connection cable
- D Negative connection cable

1. Position the vehicles so that they do not touch one another.
2. Switch off the engine and any electrical equipment.
3. Connect the positive (+) terminal of vehicle B with the positive (+) terminal of vehicle A (cable C).



4. Connect the negative (-) terminal of vehicle B to the ground connection of vehicle A (cable D).



WARNING: Do not connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the discharged battery.



WARNING: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

To Start the Engine

1. Run the engine of vehicle B at a moderately high speed.
2. Start the engine of vehicle A.
3. Run both vehicles for a minimum of three minutes before disconnecting the cables. Do not switch on the headlamps when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

Roadside Emergencies

TOWING POINTS - EXCLUDING: ST

Front Towing Point

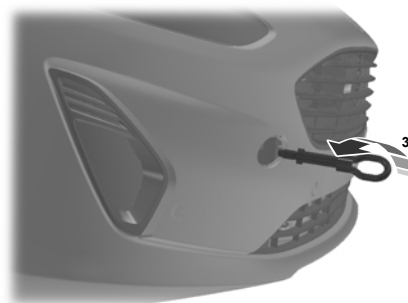
WARNING: Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed.



E292787

1. Push the cover.
2. Carefully remove the cover.



E292904

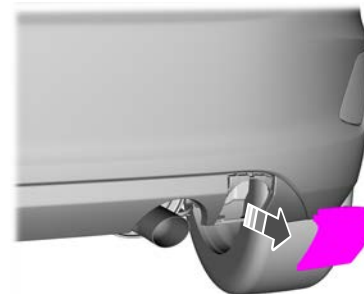
3. Install the recovery hook.

Note: It has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it.

The recovery hook is in the spare wheel well.

You must carry the recovery hook in your vehicle at all times.

Rear Towing Point



E250887

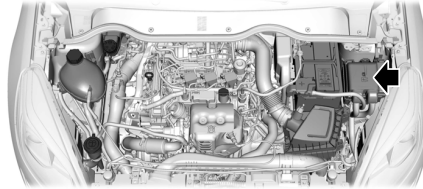
Remove the cover to install the recovery hook.

Note: If your vehicle has a tow bar, use this to tow other vehicles.

Fuses

FUSE BOX LOCATIONS

Engine Compartment Fuse Box



E250016

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box

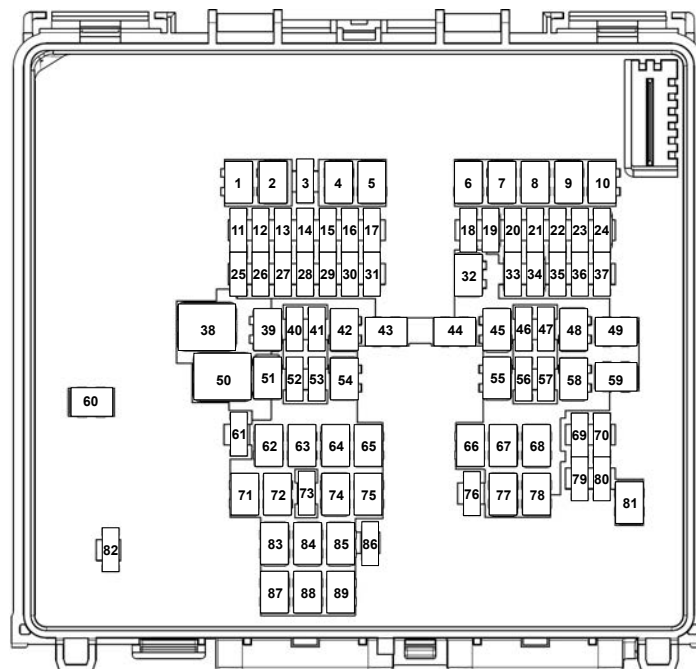
The fuse box is behind the glove compartment.

Fuses

FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

Engine Compartment Fuse Box

Fuses



Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	-	Not used.
2	60 A	Intake air heater.
3	10 A	Windshield heated washer jets.
4	40 A	Left-hand heated windshield element.
5	-	Not used.
6	30 A	Starter motor.
7	40 A	Blower motor.
8	-	Not used.
9	60 A	Glow plug control module - diesel.
10	-	Not used.
11	20 A	Steering column lock.
12	10 A	Air conditioning clutch.
13	-	Not used.
14	-	Not used.
15	-	Not used.
16	-	Not used.
17	5 A	Powertrain control module.

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
18	10 A	Heated steering wheel.
19	5 A	Electronic power assist steering.
20	-	Not used.
21	-	Not used.
22	-	Not used.
23	-	Not used.
24	-	Not used.
25	10 A	Coolant pump. Exhaust valve.
26	15 A	Evaporative emission canister purge valve. Camshaft position sensor. Fuel injection control pressure sensor. Turbocharger variable vane control solenoid. Exhaust gas recirculation cooler bypass valve. Wastegate control valve solenoid. Heated oxygen sensor.
27	20 A	Powertrain control module.
28	15 A	Active grille shutter. Oil pump. Air conditioning compressor. Wastegate control valve solenoid. Water-in-fuel sensor.

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
29	15 A	Ignition coil. Noise suppression capacitor.
30	10 A	Air conditioning pressure relief valve.
31	-	Not used.
32	30 A	Body control module.
33	10 A	Blind spot information system. Cruise control module. Front parking aid camera. Rear parking aid camera. Parking assist control module.
34	10 A	Transmission fluid pump.
35	10 A	Headlamps.
36	5 A	Anti-lock brake system.
37	-	Not used.
38	40 A	Blower motor.
39	-	Not used.
40	-	Not used.
41	20 A	Heated seats.
42	-	Not used.

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
43	40 A	Trailer tow module.
44	40 A	Right-hand heated windshield element.
45	30 A	Left-hand rear door module.
46	5 A	Headlamp leveling.
47	15 A	Audio unit amplifier.
48	20 A	Moonroof.
49	60 A	Anti-lock brake pump.
50	60 A	High-speed cooling fan.
51	20 A	Transmission fluid pump.
52	10 A	Data link connector.
53	-	Not used.
54	30 A	Right-hand rear door module.
55	30 A	Anti-lock brake valve.
56	5 A	Brake on-off switch.
57	15 A	Audio unit amplifier.
58	-	Not used.
59	40 A	Body control module.

Fuses

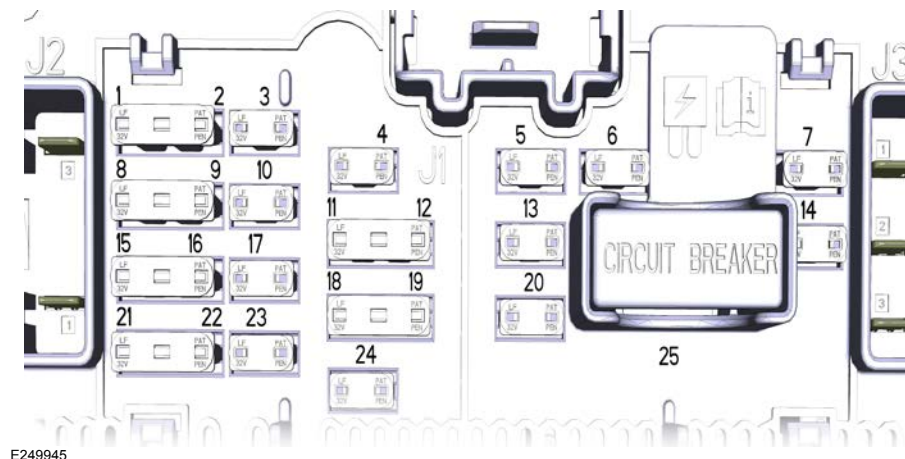
Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
60	-	Not used.
61	-	Not used.
62	-	Not used.
63	-	Not used.
64	-	Not used.
65	-	Not used.
66	-	Not used.
67	-	Not used.
68	20 A	Fuel pump.
69	20 A	Fuel heater - diesel.
70	-	Not used.
71	-	Not used.
72	-	Not used.
73	5 A	Rain sensor.
74	30 A	Windshield wiper motor.
75	-	Not used.
76	-	Not used.

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
77	25 A	Heated rear window.
78	-	Not used.
79	20 A	Horn.
80	-	Not used.
81	25 A	Fuel heater - diesel.
82	15 A	Rear window washer pump.
83	20 A	Cigar lighter. Front auxiliary power points.
84	-	Not used.
85	40 A	Low-speed cooling fan.
86	20 A	Rear window wiper.
87	-	Not used.
88	-	Not used.
89	-	Not used.

Fuses

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	5 A	Restraints control module.
2	5 A	In-vehicle temperature and humidity sensor.
3	10 A	Parking assist control module.
4	10 A	Ignition switch.

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
		Push button ignition switch.
5	20 A	Lock. Unlock.
6	10 A	Moonroof.
7	30 A	Right-hand mirror switch. Right-hand front power windows.
8	-	Not used.
9	5 A	Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. Auto-dimming interior mirror.
10	10 A	Data link connector.
11	5 A	Telematics modem.
12	5 A	Central security module.
13	15 A	Child safety locks. Fuel filler door.
14	30 A	Left-hand mirror switch. Left-hand front power windows.
15	15 A	Not used. Heated steering wheel. Headlamp control module.
16	-	Not used.

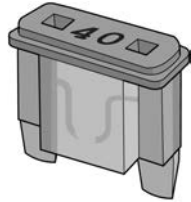
Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
17	15 A	Voice control. Information and entertainment display. Compact disc player.
18	-	Not used.
19	7.5 A	Battery back-up sounder.
20	10 A	Anti-theft alarm horn.
21	7.5 A	Climate control.
22	7.5 A	Steering wheel module. Instrument cluster. Data link connector.
23	20 A	Audio unit.
24	-	Not used.
25	-	Not used.

Fuses

CHANGING A FUSE

General Information



E217331

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse.

Engine Compartment Fuse Box

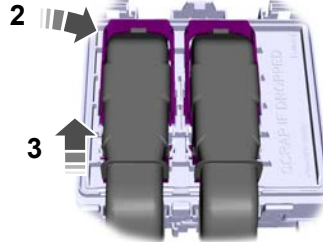


WARNING: Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



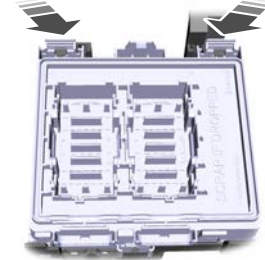
E253688

1. Pull latch toward you and remove the top cover.



E253689

2. Lift connector lever upward.
3. Pull connector upward to remove it.



E253693

4. Pull both latches toward you and remove the fuse box.
5. Flip the fuse box over and open the lid.

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



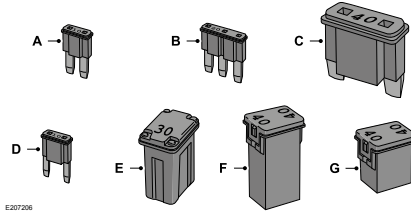
WARNING: Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

1. Open the glove compartment and empty the contents.
2. Turn the retaining clips and remove them.

Fuses

3. Press the sides inward and swivel the glove compartment downward.

Fuses Types



- A Micro 2.
- B Micro 3.
- C Maxi.
- D Mini.
- E M Case.
- F J Case.
- G J Case Low Profile.

Maintenance

GENERAL INFORMATION



WARNING: Do not work on a hot engine.



WARNING: Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake.



WARNING: Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off. See **Engine Cooling Fan** (page 309).

Make sure that you fit filler caps securely after carrying out maintenance checks.

We recommend that you carry out the following checks.

Check Daily

- Exterior lamps.
- Interior lamps.
- Warning lamps and indicators.

Check When Refueling

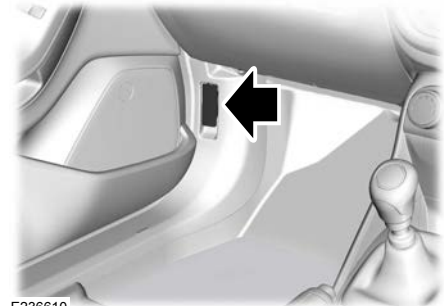
- Washer fluid level. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 313).
- Tire pressures. See **Tire Pressures** (page 346).
- Tire condition. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 328).

Check Monthly

- Engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 307).
- Engine coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 309).
- Brake fluid level. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 310).
- Pipes, hoses and reservoirs for leaks.
- Air conditioning operation.
- Parking brake operation.
- Horn operation.
- Tightness of lug nuts. See **Lug Nuts** (page 362).

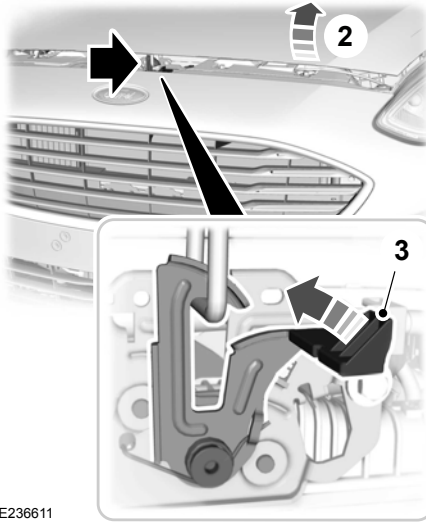
OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

Opening the Hood



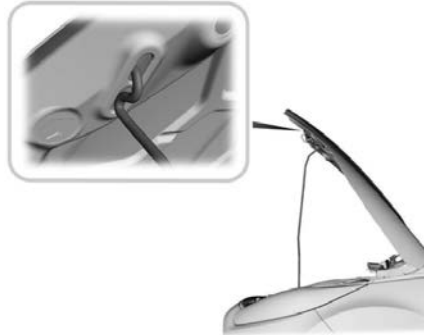
1. Pull the hood release lever.

Maintenance



E236611

2. Slightly lift the hood.
3. Release the hood latch by pushing the secondary release lever to your left-hand side.
4. Open the hood.



E87786

5. Support the hood with the strut.

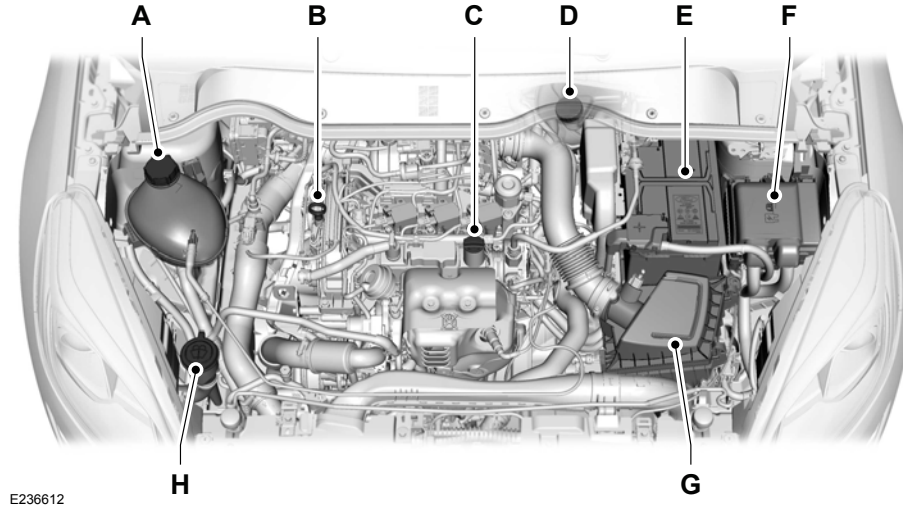
Closing the Hood

1. Remove the strut from the catch and secure it correctly in the clip.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 20–30 cm (8–12 in).

Note: Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.

Maintenance

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.0L ECOBOOST™, LHD



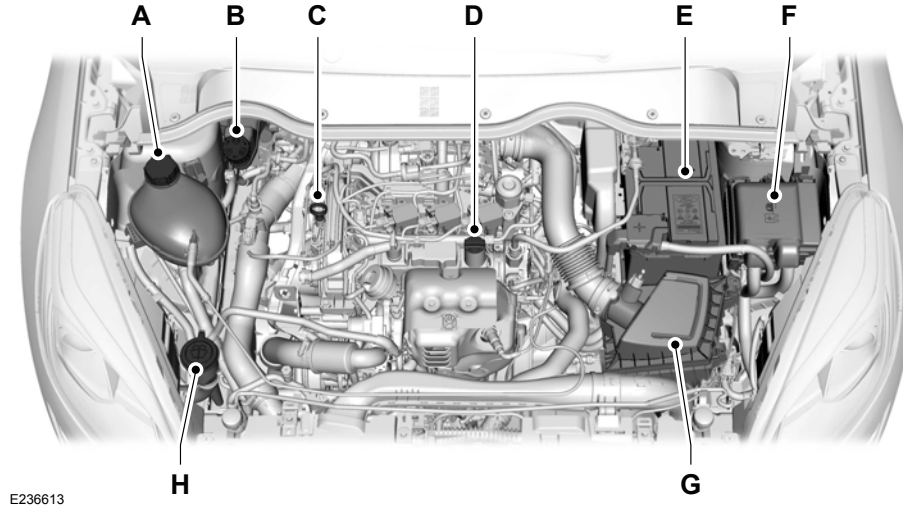
- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 309).
- B Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 307).
- C Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 307).
- D Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 310).

Maintenance

- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 311).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 280).
- G Air filter.
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 313).

Maintenance

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.0L ECOBOOST™, RHD

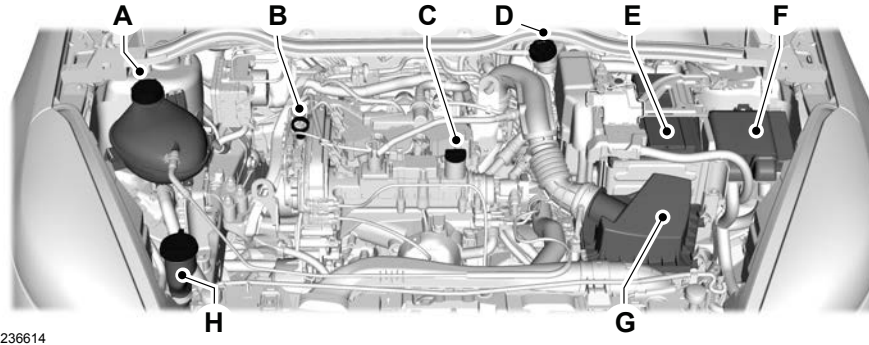


- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 309).
- B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 310).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 307).
- D Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 307).

Maintenance

- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 311).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 280).
- G Air filter.
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 313).

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.1L DURATEC, LHD

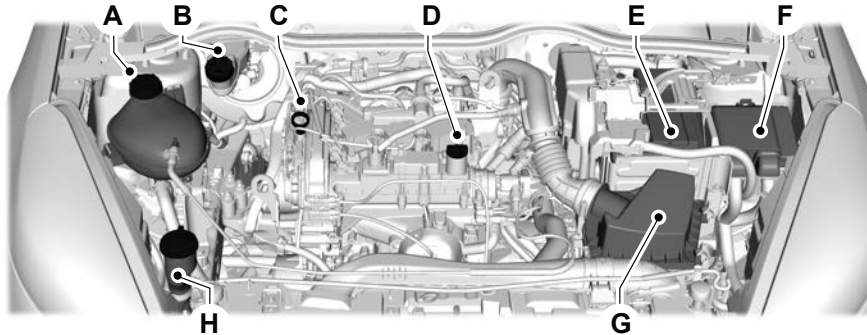


- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 309).
- B Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 307).
- C Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 307).

Maintenance

- D Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 310).
- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 311).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 280).
- G Air filter.
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 313).

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.1L DURATEC, RHD



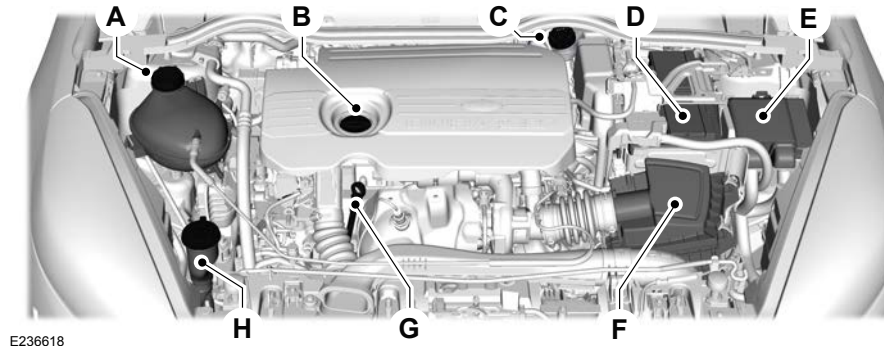
E236615

- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 309).
- B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 310).

Maintenance

- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 307).
- D Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 307).
- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 311).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 280).
- G Air filter.
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 313).

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL, LHD

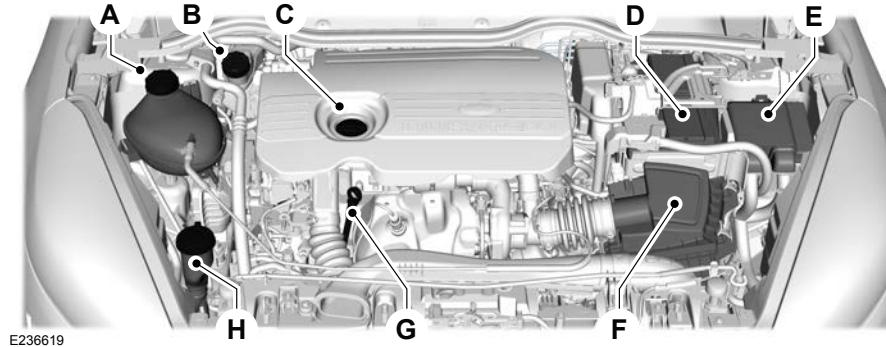


Maintenance

- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 309).
- B Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 307).
- C Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 310).
- D Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 311).
- E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 280).
- F Air filter.
- G Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 307).
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 313).

Maintenance

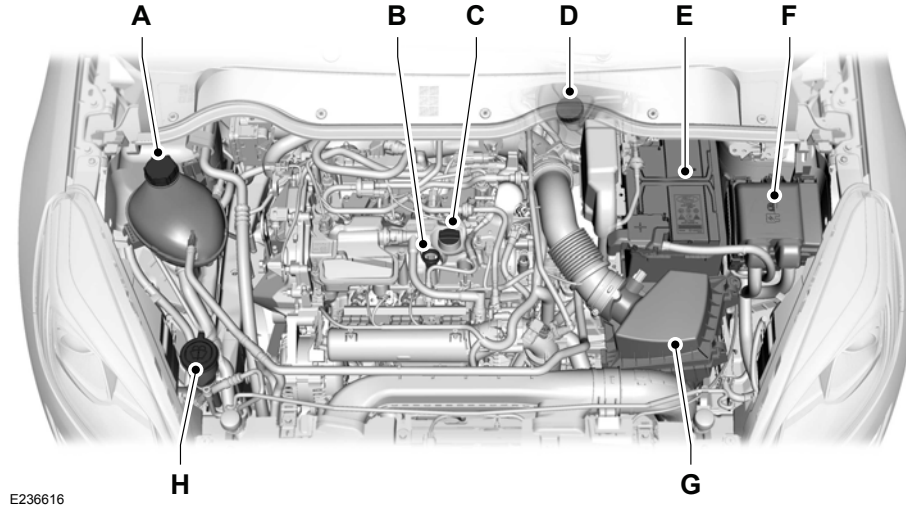
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL, RHD



- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 309).
- B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 310).
- C Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 307).
- D Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 311).
- E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 280).
- F Air filter.
- G Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 307).
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 313).

Maintenance

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBOOST™, LHD



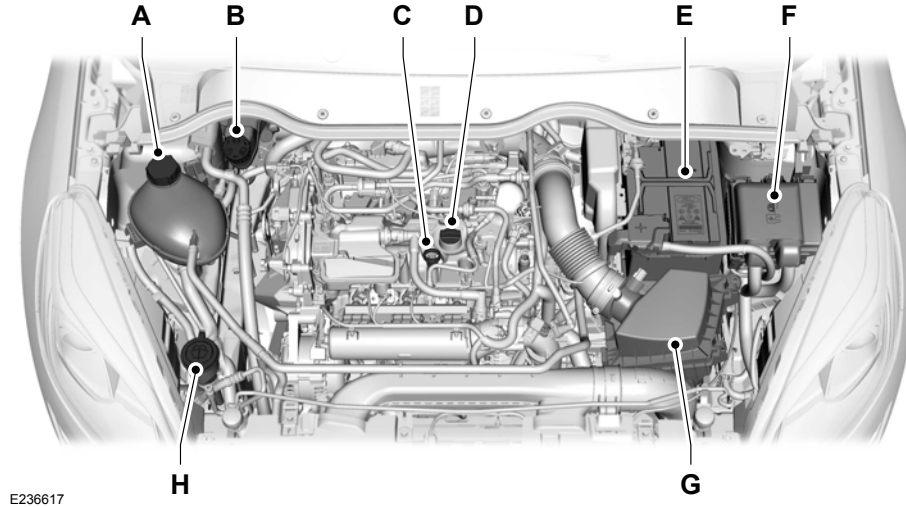
- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 309).
- B Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 307).
- C Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 307).
- D Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 310).

Maintenance

- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 311).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 280).
- G Air filter.
- H Windshield and rear window washer reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 313).

Maintenance

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBOOST™, RHD

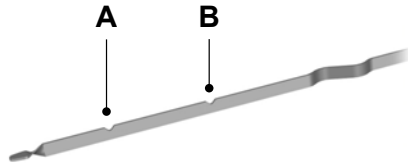


- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 309).
- B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 310).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 307).
- D Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 307).

Maintenance

- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 311).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 280).
- G Air filter.
- H Windshield and rear window washer reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 313).

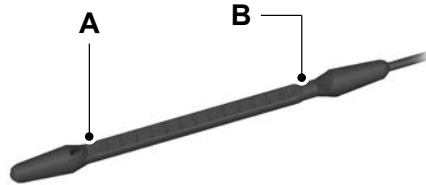
ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.0L ECOBOOST™/1.1L DURATEC



E141337

- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

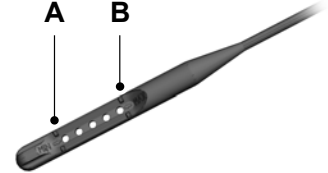
ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL



E140423

- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.5L ECOBOOST™



E264320

- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

ENGINE OIL CHECK

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.

Maintenance


2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth. Reinstall the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.


If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.

Note: Make sure that the oil level is between the minimum and the maximum marks.

Note: The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km (3,000 mi).

Adding Engine Oil

**WARNING:** Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.

3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 363).
4. Reinstall the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

Note: Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.

OIL CHANGE INDICATOR RESET

Only reset the system after changing the engine oil and oil filter.

To reset the oil change indicator, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Information	Press the OK button.
Oil life	Press the OK button.
Reset oil life	Press and hold the OK button until the system reset confirmation appears.

Maintenance

ENGINE COOLING FAN - GASOLINE

 **WARNING:** Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.


Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off.


ENGINE COOLING FAN - DIESEL

 **WARNING:** Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off. This could happen in low ambient temperatures and independent of the engine coolant temperature, for example short journeys or low coolant temperature. See **Diesel Particulate Filter** (page 185).

ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

 **WARNING:** Do not dispose of coolant in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

 **WARNING:** Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



E170684

Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir at ambient temperature. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, immediately add coolant.


The coolant concentration should be maintained within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -34°C (-29°F) and -37°C (-35°F).


Note: Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.


Maintenance

Note: Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems.

Adding Coolant

 **WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

 **WARNING:** Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilled on a hot exhaust.

We do not recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.

Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle.

Note: Add a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water or prediluted engine coolant that meets the correct specification.

Note: Use fluids which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by the vehicle Warranty. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 363).


To top up the coolant level do the following:


1. Remove the coolant reservoir cap.
2. Add coolant to the **MAX** mark, do not overfill.
3. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.


In case of emergency, you can add water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.


Note: Prolonged use of an incorrect dilution of coolant can cause damage, for example corrosion, overheating or freezing.

BRAKE FLUID CHECK

 **WARNING:** Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

 **WARNING:** A fluid level between the **MAX** and **MIN** lines is within the normal operating range and there is no need to add fluid. A fluid level not in the normal operating range could compromise the performance of the system. Have your vehicle checked immediately.

Maintenance



E170684

To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 363).

CLUTCH FLUID CHECK

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 310).

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY



WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



WARNING: When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



WARNING: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.



WARNING: For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

The battery is in the engine compartment. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 296).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

Maintenance

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

Note: *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.*

To maintain correct operation of the battery management system, if you add any electrical devices to your vehicle, do not connect the ground connection directly to the negative battery terminal. A connection at the negative battery terminal can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *If you add electrical accessories or components to your vehicle this may adversely affect battery performance, durability and the performance of other electrical systems on your vehicle.*

If you replace the battery make sure it matches the electrical requirements of your vehicle.

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

Remove and Reinstall the Battery

To disconnect or remove the battery, do the following:

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

Note: *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

4. Disconnect the negative battery cable terminal.

5. Disconnect the positive battery cable terminal.
6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.
8. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: *Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.*

Note: *Make sure the battery cable terminals are fully tightened.*

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Overriding Window Bounce-Back** (page 98).
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

Battery Disposal



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

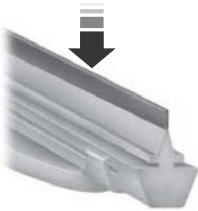
Maintenance

WASHER FLUID CHECK

When adding fluid, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing and improve the cleaning capability. For information on fluid dilution follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Note: The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES

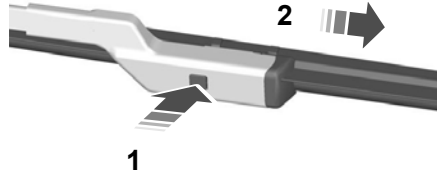


E142463

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

CHANGING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES



E72899

1. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking button.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.

2. Remove the wiper blade.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

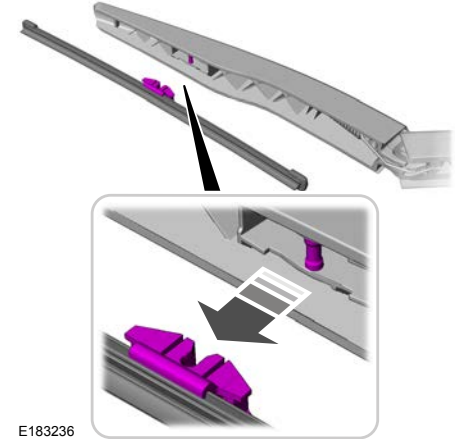
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

CHANGING THE REAR WIPER BLADES

1. Lift the wiper arm.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.



E183236

2. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.

Maintenance

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

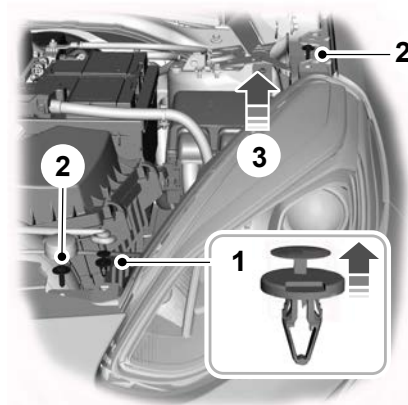
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

REMOVING A HEADLAMP



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to do so could result in serious personal injury.

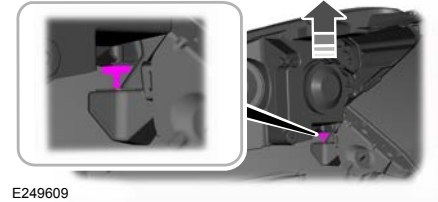


E236623

1. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully remove the trim clip.

Note: Raise the center pin and then remove the clip.

2. Remove the screws.



E249609

3. Place your hand below the headlamp housing and lift the headlamp at the center area to disengage the lower fixing clip.
4. Carefully lift the headlamp up at the front and rear to disengage it from the fixing points.

Note: Take care when removing the headlamp. There are rupture points adjacent to the securing screws that are designed to separate under impact.

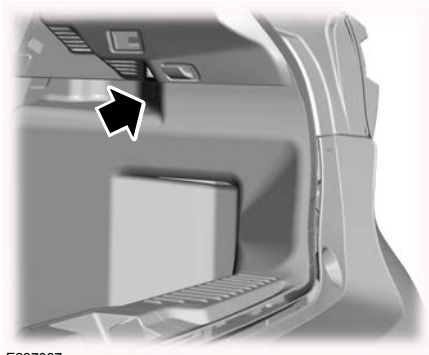
5. Slightly rotate the rear of the headlamp toward the center of the vehicle so that it clears the front fender.
6. Move the headlamp slightly backwards to clear the radiator grille panel. Then lift the headlamp straight upward.
7. Disconnect the electrical connector.
8. Remove the headlamp.

Maintenance

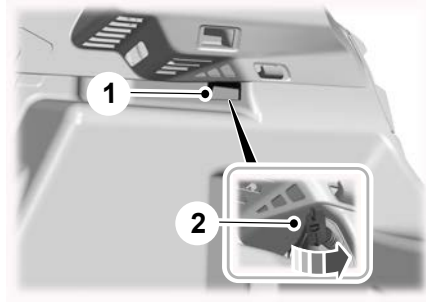
9. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

REMOVING A REAR LAMP

Brake Lamp, Rear Lamp and Direction Indicator



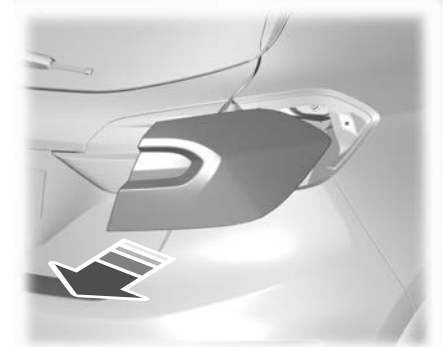
E237937



E237938

1. Carefully cut the trim to access the lamp release wing nut.
2. Turn the wing nut counterclockwise to release the lamp.

Note: *You cannot fully remove the wing nut.*

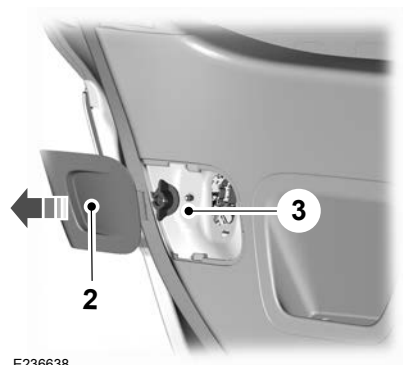


E236624

3. Remove the lamp.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector.
5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

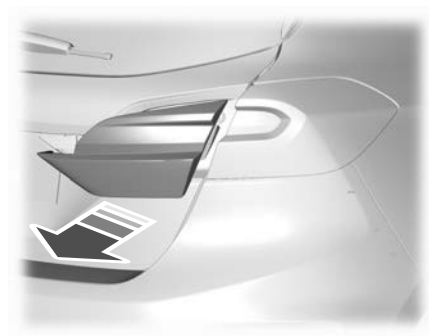
Maintenance

Reversing Lamp



E236638

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Carefully remove the cover.
3. Turn the wing nut counterclockwise and remove it.



E238054

4. Remove the lamp.
5. Disconnect the electrical connector.
6. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A BULB

WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to do so could result in serious personal injury.

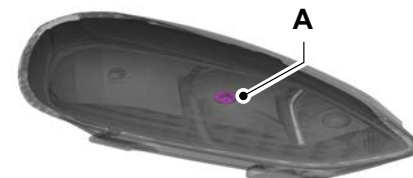
WARNING: Lamps and associated components become hot when in use. Let them cool down before you remove them.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Bulb Specification Chart** (page 379).

Headlamp

You may have to remove the headlamp assembly prior to replacing a bulb. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 314).

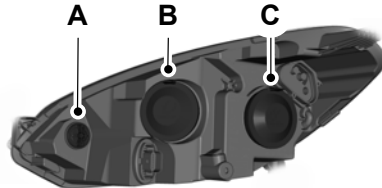
Reflector Headlamp



E249611

A Daytime running lamp.

Maintenance

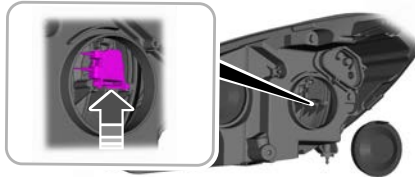


E236599

- A Front direction indicator.
- B High beam headlamp and daytime running lamp.
- C Low beam headlamp.

Low Beam Headlamp

1. Carefully remove the cover.



E249634

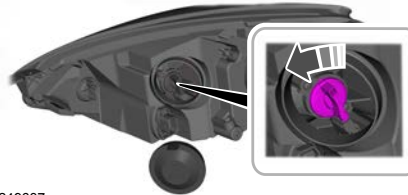
2. Press the clip up to release the bulb holder.

3. Remove the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.
4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Do not touch the bulb glass.

High Beam Headlamp and Daytime Running Lamp

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.



E249637

3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

Note: You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.

4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

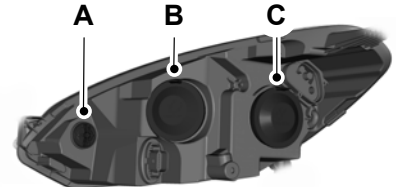
Note: Do not touch the bulb glass.

Projector Headlamp



E249612

- A Daytime running lamp.



E236599

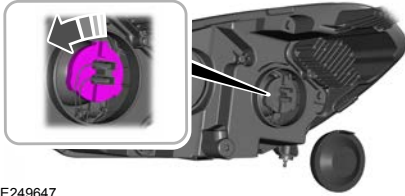
- A Front direction indicator.
- B High beam headlamp.
- C Low beam headlamp.

Low Beam Headlamp

1. Carefully remove the cover.

Maintenance

2. Disconnect the electrical connector.



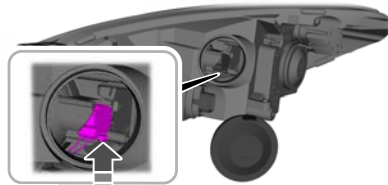
E249647

3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Remove the bulb.
5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Do not touch the bulb glass.

High Beam Headlamp

1. Carefully remove the cover.



E249660

2. Press the clip up to release the bulb holder.
3. Remove the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.
4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

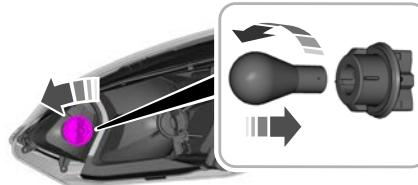
Note: Do not touch the bulb glass.

Daytime Running Lamp

These lamps have LEDs.

Note: We recommend that you have LEDs changed by an authorized dealer.

Front Direction Indicator



E236630

1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

LED Headlamp



E272995

A Daytime running lamp.

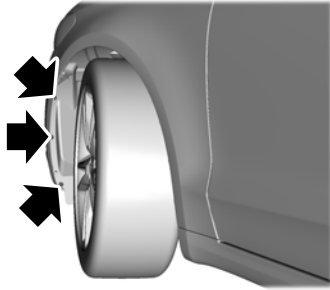
These lamps have LEDs.

Note: We recommend that you have LEDs changed by an authorized dealer.

Maintenance

Front Fog Lamp

All Vehicles - Excluding: ST, ST Line and Vignale



E159695

1. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully remove the wheel arch liner fasteners. Pull the wheel liner back toward the tire to gain access to the bulb.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.



E236628

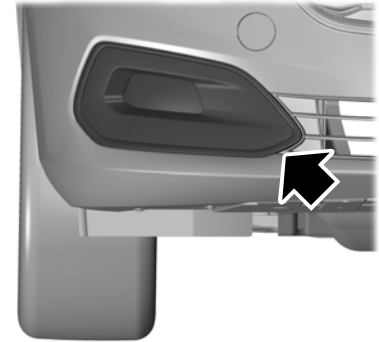
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

Note: You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.

4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

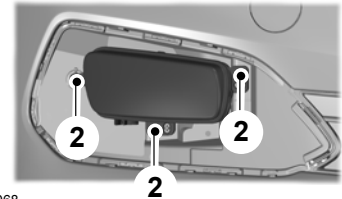
Note: Do not touch the bulb glass.

ST, ST Line and Vignale



E273066

1. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully remove the housing cover.



E273068

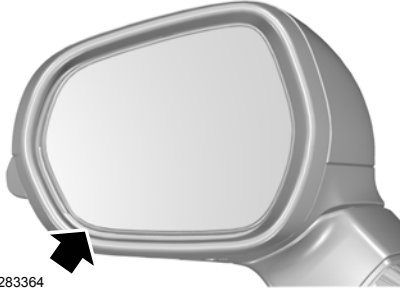
Maintenance

2. Remove the screws and the lamp.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

Note: You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.

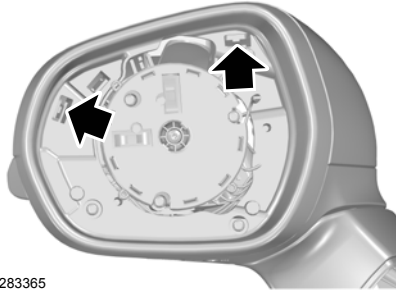
5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Side Direction Indicator



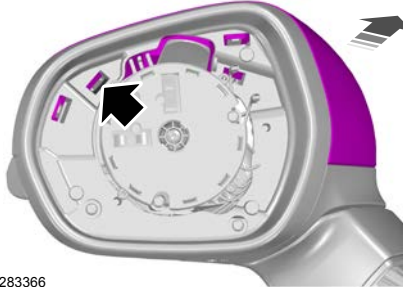
E283364

1. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully lever the mirror glass from the lower outer edge and remove it.
2. Unplug the connector from the rear side of the glass.



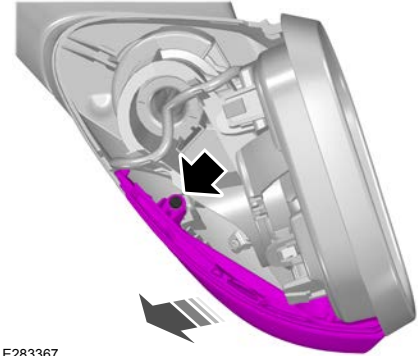
E283365

3. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully press the two housing cover clips and release them.



E283366

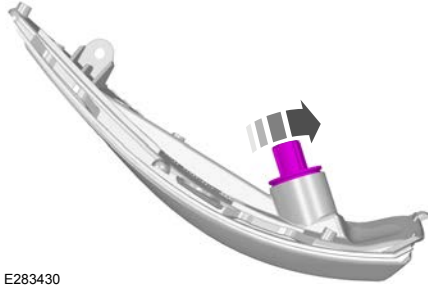
4. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to push the housing cover through the access hole and remove it.



E283367

5. Use a T10 Torx screwdriver to remove the lamp body.

Maintenance



E283430

6. Turn the bulb holder clockwise and remove it.
7. Pull the bulb straight out.
8. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

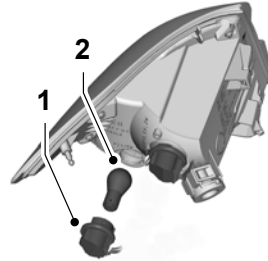
Note: Make sure that both mirror housing cover clips lock into position.

Note: We recommend that you have bulbs changed by an authorized dealer.

Rear Lamp

Remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp** (page 315).

Rear Lamp and Stoptlamp



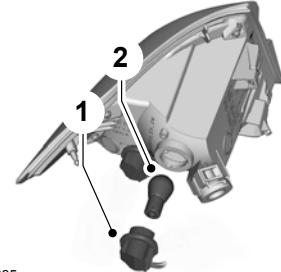
E236634

1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: High series have LEDs.

Note: We recommend that you have LEDs changed by an authorized dealer.

Rear Direction Indicator

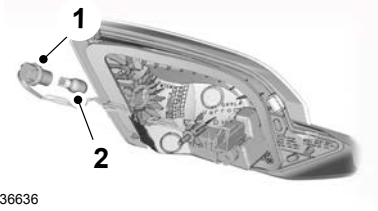


E236635

1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Maintenance

Reversing Lamp



E236636

1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

License Plate Lamp

These lamps have LEDs.

Note: We recommend that you have LEDs changed by an authorized dealer.

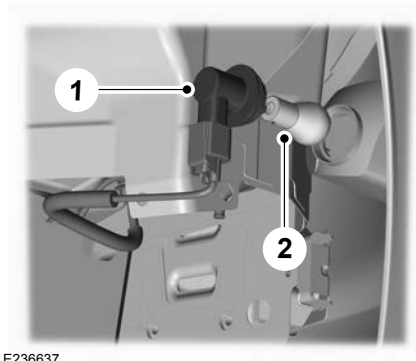
High Mounted Stoplamp

These lamps have LEDs.

Note: We recommend that you have LEDs changed by an authorized dealer.

Rear Fog Lamp

Access the underside of your vehicle behind the rear wheel.



E236637

1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Vehicle Care

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, for example dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash your vehicle when it is hot to the touch, or during strong or direct sunlight.
- Dry your vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel to eliminate water spotting.
- Immediately remove fuel spillages, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time.
- Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.
- When filling with AdBlue®, remove any residue on painted surfaces immediately.

Note: *Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage painted surfaces. If these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash the affected area as soon as possible.*

Note: *If you use a car wash with a waxing cycle, make sure that you remove the wax from the windshield and the wiper blades.*

Note: *Before using a car wash, check that it is suitable for your vehicle.*

Note: *Some car washes use water at high pressure. Due to this, water droplets may enter inside your vehicle and could also damage certain parts of your vehicle.*

Note: *Remove the antenna before using an automatic car wash.*

Note: *Switch the blower motor off to prevent contamination of the cabin air filter.*

We recommend that you wash your vehicle with a sponge and lukewarm water containing a car shampoo.

Cleaning the Headlamps

Note: *Do not scrape the headlamps.*

Note: *Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean the headlamps.*

Note: *Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.*

Cleaning the Rear Window

Note: *Do not scrape the inside of the rear window*

Note: *Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean the inside of the rear window.*

Clean the inside of the rear window with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.

Cleaning the Chrome Trim (If Equipped)

Note: *Do not use abrasives or chemical solvents. Use soapy water.*

Note: *Do not apply cleaning product to hot surfaces and do not leave cleaning product on chrome surfaces for a period of time exceeding that which is recommended.*

Note: *Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, may cause damage over a period of time.*

Cleaning Stripes or Graphics (If Equipped)

Hand washing your vehicle is preferred however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Do not use water pressure higher than 14,000 kPa (2,000 psi).
- Do not use water hotter than 82°C (179°F).

Vehicle Care

- Use a spray with a 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at a 305 mm (12 in) distance and 90° angle to your vehicle's surface.

Note: Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle's surface.

BodyPaintwork Preservation

Frequently remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout to avoid paint surface damage.

Frequently wash the underbody of your vehicle if salt is applied on the road.

We recommend that you wax the paintwork once or twice a year.

Note: Do not apply polish in strong sunlight as this dries the polish too quickly.

Note: Do not allow polish to come in contact with unpainted plastic surfaces as it could be difficult to remove.

Note: Do not apply polish to the windshield or rear window. A contaminated windshield or contaminated wiper blades may lead to increased wiper noise, reduced wipe quality or reduced rain sensor performance.

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

Note: Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill on interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.

Note: We recommend distilled water when cleaning.

Fabric, Carpets, Cloth Seats, Headliners and Floor Mats

Note: Avoid soaking any surface. Do not use excessive amounts of water to clean the vehicle interior.

Note: To avoid spots or discoloration, clean the entire surface.

To clean:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner or brush.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately, but do not soak or the ring will set.

Seatbelts



WARNING: Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

Note: Do not use abrasives, or chemical solvents to clean them.

Note: Do not allow moisture to penetrate the seatbelt retractor mechanism.

Vehicle Care

Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. Let them dry naturally, away from artificial heat.

Leather Interior (If Equipped)

Note: Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For cleaning and removing stains such as dye transfer, use a leather cleaning product for automotive interiors.

Do not use the following products as these may damage the leather:

- Oil and petroleum or silicone-based leather conditioners.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcohol solutions.
- Solvents or cleaners intended specifically for rubber, vinyl and plastics.

Suede Micro Fiber Fabric (If Equipped)

Note: Do not steam clean.

Note: To avoid spots or discoloration, clean the entire surface.

Do not use the following products:

- Leather care products.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcoholic solutions.
- Spot removers.
- Shoe polish.

To clean:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately, but do not soak or the ring will set.

Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens

Note: Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean the instrument cluster screens, LCD screens or radio screens. These cleaning products can damage the screens.

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

Do not spray any liquid directly onto the screens.

Do not use a microfiber cloth to clean the bezel around the display screens as it could damage the surface.

Rear Windows

Note: Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.

Note: Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.

Mirrors

Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.

Storage Compartments, Cup Holders and Ashtrays

To clean:

- Take out any removable inserts.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

Vehicle Care

CLEANING LEATHER SEATS

Note: Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.

Note: Clean and treat spills as soon as possible. Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.

Note: Avoid soaking any surface.

Note: We recommend distilled water when cleaning.

For cleaning and removing stains such as dye transfer, use a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors.

Do not use the following products as these may damage the leather:

- Oil and petroleum or silicone-based leather conditioners.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcohol solutions.
- Solvents or cleaners intended specifically for rubber, vinyl and plastics.

To clean:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
- Do not rub any stains into the leather.
- For perforated leather, do not use foam cleaning products.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

You should repair paintwork damage caused by stones from the road or minor scratches as soon as possible. A choice of products are available from an authorized dealer.

Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.

Always read and follow the manufacturer's instructions before using the products.

CLEANING THE WHEELS

Note: Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.

Note: Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period of time.

Note: Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.

Note: If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Note: Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean them weekly with the recommended wheel and tire cleaner.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse them thoroughly with a pressurized stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.

Vehicle Care

Consult your authorized dealer for approved cleaning products.

Using other non-recommended cleaning products can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

BODY STYLING KITS

The distance between the underside of your vehicle and the ground is less than that of other models. Drive with extreme care to avoid damage to your vehicle.

Wheels and Tires

GENERAL INFORMATION

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check and set the tire pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive your vehicle and when the tires are cold. See **Tire Pressures** (page 346).

Note: Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy.

Only use approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and could make the National Type Approval invalid.

Installation of any tires that are not the original equipment tire size can cause the speedometer to display incorrect vehicle speed.

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT - VEHICLES WITH: TEMPORARY MOBILITY KIT

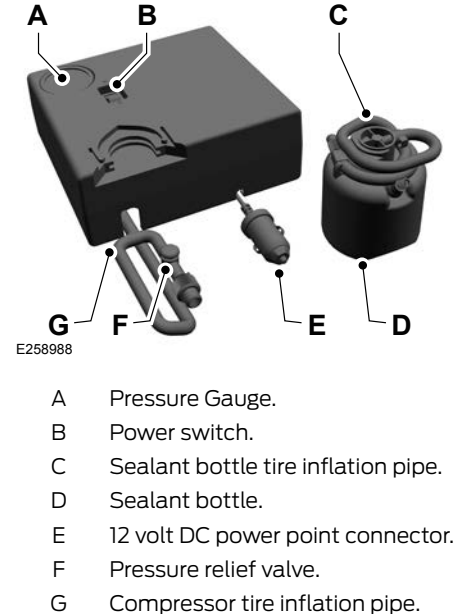
WARNING: Do not use the inflator kit on run flat tires. This could cause loss of vehicle control.

WARNING: Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.

WARNING: Do not use the kit on a previously damaged tire, for example when it has been driven under inflated. This could cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

If your vehicle does not have a spare wheel it has a tire sealant and inflator kit. The kit is in the luggage compartment. Only use the kit supplied with your vehicle.

Note: The kit can only temporarily repair one tire puncture with a maximum puncture size of up to 6 mm (0.24 in).



Note: A maximum speed warning label is attached to the sealant bottle.

Wheels and Tires

Note: Do not use the sealant bottle after its expiry date. You can obtain a replacement sealant bottle from an authorized dealer.



If the low tire pressure warning lamp illuminates do the following:

1. Gradually reduce the vehicle speed and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
3. Check for a punctured tire.

Note: Do not remove objects, for example nails or screws from a punctured tire.

Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



WARNING: Check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire. This could cause personal injury.



WARNING: Watch the sidewall of the tire when inflating. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appears, switch the compressor off and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve. Do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.



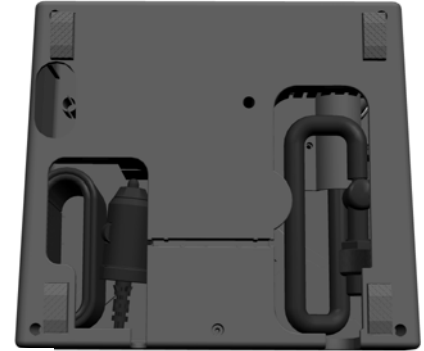
WARNING: Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is operating. This could cause personal injury if the tire bursts.



WARNING: Do not leave the kit unattended when it is in use. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not keep the compressor operating for more than 10 minutes. This could cause the compressor to malfunction causing serious personal injury.



E258994

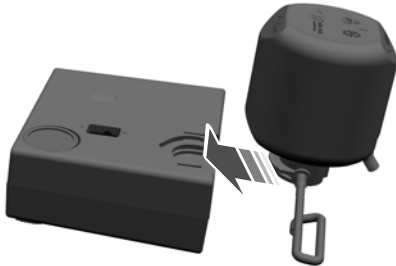
1. Release the tire inflation pipe and the 12 volt DC power point connector from the underside of the compressor.

Wheels and Tires



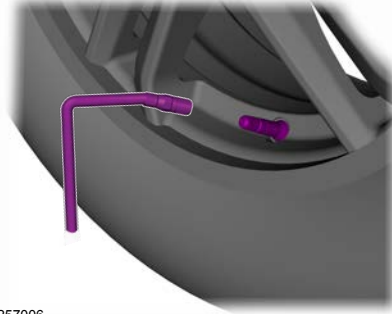
E259148

2. Uncoil the sealant bottle tire inflation pipe.



E259014

3. Attach the sealant bottle to the compressor.
4. Attach the compressor tire inflation pipe to the valve on the sealant bottle.



E257006

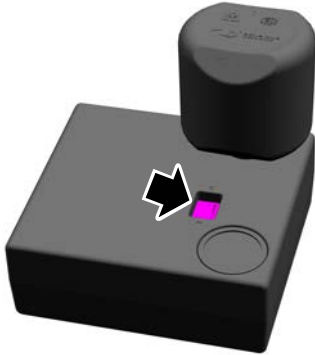
5. Remove the tire valve dust cap and attach the sealant bottle tire inflation pipe to the tire valve.



E257022

6. Plug the 12 volt DC power point connector into the 12 volt DC socket. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 149).
7. Start the engine.

Wheels and Tires



E259160

8. Switch the compressor on.



E257121

9. Inflate the tire to between 2–3 bar (29–44 psi).

Note: If the tire pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi) within 10 minutes, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.

10. When the tire reaches the recommended tire pressure of between 2–3 bar (29–44 psi), switch the compressor and the ignition off.
11. Disconnect the sealant bottle tire inflation pipe from the tire valve and the 12 volt DC power point connector.

Note: Do not remove the sealant bottle from the compressor.

12. Reinstall the tire valve dust cap.
13. Place the warning label on the steering wheel and correctly stow the kit in the luggage compartment.



E257942

14. Immediately drive your vehicle for 4–6 km (2–4 mi). Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).

Wheels and Tires



E257121

15. After driving between 4–6 km (2–4 mi), stop your vehicle and recheck the tire pressure. See **Tire Pressures** (page 346).

Note: *If the tire pressure has dropped to 1.8 bar (26 psi) or below, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.*

After Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



WARNING: If you experience heavy vibrations, unsteady steering behavior or noises while driving, reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Recheck the tire and its pressure. If the tire pressure is less than 1.3 bar (18.9 psi) or if there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage visible, do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.

The kit only provides temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tire repair or replacement after using the kit could differ from country to country. We recommend you consult a tire specialist.

After using the kit:

- Do not drive your vehicle more than 200 km (124 mi) before repairing or replacing the punctured tire.
- Inform all other users of your vehicle that a tire was sealed using the kit. Make them aware of the special driving conditions that must be adhered to.

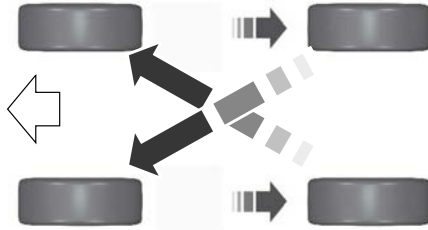
- Regularly check the tire pressure until the sealed tire is repaired or replaced by a tire specialist. Before the tire is removed from the wheel rim, you must inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant.
- Remove the sealant bottle and the sealant bottle tire inflation pipe from the compressor and discard it in your household waste or return it to an authorized dealer.
- Purchase a replacement sealant bottle and sealant bottle tire inflation pipe from an authorized dealer.

TIRE CARE

Note: *Front tires shown on the left side of the diagram.*

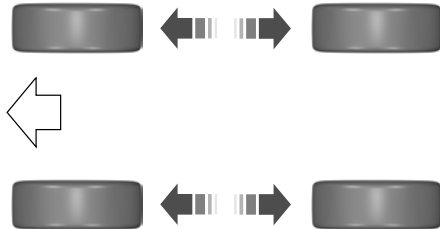
Wheels and Tires

Non-directional tires



E142547

Directional tires



E70415

To make sure the front and rear tires of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tires from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals between 5,000 km (3,000 mi) and 10,000 km (6,000 mi).



WARNING: Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

Examine the tires regularly for cuts, foreign objects and uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

Check the tire pressures (including the spare) when cold, every two weeks.

USING WINTER TIRES



E278852

We recommend that you use winter or all-season tires carrying this symbol when the temperature is 7°C (45°F) or lower, or in snow and ice conditions.

Inflate the winter tires to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressures table. See **Tire Pressures** (page 353).





WARNING: Snow tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an


Wheels and Tires


increased risk of loss of control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. Follow the Ford recommended tire inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (on the door hinge pillar, door latch post or the door edge that meets the door latch post, next to the driver seat), or Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

USING SNOW CHAINS

 **WARNING:** Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.

 **WARNING:** Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

 **WARNING:** If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

Only use snow chains on the front wheels.

Only use snow chains on the following specified tire sizes:

- 195/60 R 15.
- 195/60 R 15 ECO.

Note: Maintain correct tire pressures.


Note: The anti-lock brake system continues to correctly operate.

Note: We recommend that you switch the stability control system off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 199).

Do not use snow chains greater than 10 mm (0.4 in).

Do not use self-tensioning snow chains.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

 **WARNING:** The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Note: You should only use tire sealants in roadside emergencies as they may cause damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensor.

Note: If the tire pressure monitoring system sensor becomes damaged, it may not function.



Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

Wheels and Tires

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System



Note: Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.

You should always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

Check the tire pressure periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge. See **When Inflating Your Tires** in this chapter.

Changing Wheels With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System

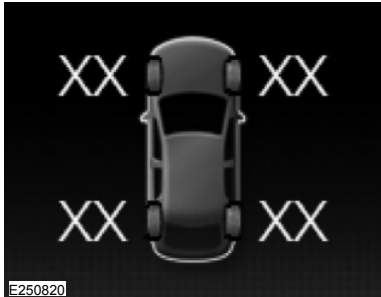
When changing the wheels of your vehicle, the tire pressure monitoring system needs to relearn the tire pressure sensors. To achieve this perform the following:

1. Make sure all tires are inflated to the proper pressure. If not, inflate the tires to the correct pressure.
2. Park your vehicle for at least 20 minutes.
3. Carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure** later in this section.

Wheels and Tires

4. The tire pressure monitoring system automatically re-learns the tire pressure sensors the next time you drive your vehicle for approximately 15 minutes above 40 km/h (25 mph).

Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System



The tire pressure monitoring system measures pressure in your road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. You can view the tire pressure readings through the information display. See **General Information** (page 113). The low tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under-inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns on and a short time later turns off, your tire pressure still needs to be checked.

When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the system will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel and tire assembly needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle.

To restore the full function of the tire pressure monitoring system, have the damaged road wheel and tire assembly repaired and remounted on your vehicle.

When You Believe Your System is Not Operating Properly

The main function of the tire pressure monitoring system is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. See the following chart for information concerning your tire pressure monitoring system:

Wheels and Tires

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
Solid warning light	Tire(s) under-inflated	Make sure tires are at the proper pressure. See Inflating your tires in this chapter. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 32 km/h (20 mph) before the light turns off.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Flashing warning light	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Wheels and Tires

When Inflating Your Tires



WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the tire pressure monitoring system may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 32 km/h (20 mph) for the light to turn off after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

How Temperature Affects Your Tire Pressure

The tire pressure monitoring system monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase about 14–28 kPa (2–4 psi) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease about 21 kPa (3 psi) for a drop of 30°F (17°C) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may

be detected by the tire pressure monitoring system as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the system warning light for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is on, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary. Check the air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure

Overview

You must carry out the system reset procedure after each tire replacement or adjustment of the tire pressures.

To maintain your vehicle load carrying capability, your vehicle may require different tire pressures in the front compared to the rear. In these cases, the system illuminates the warning lamp at different pressures for the front and rear tires.

If the tires are rotated, you need to reset the system in order to relearn the positions of the tire pressure sensors. The system cannot tell which position a tire pressure sensor is in, and assumes you have set the tire pressures correctly.

Performing the Reset Procedure

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Navigate to the tire monitor menu in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 118).
3. Press and hold the OK button until a confirmation message appears. If your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system reset button, press and hold the button until a confirmation message appears.

CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL - VEHICLES WITH: SPARE WHEEL

Vehicles With a Spare Wheel



WARNING: Do not fit more than one spare wheel on your vehicle at any one time.

Wheels and Tires

WARNING: Do not carry out any tire repairs on a spare wheel.

WARNING: If you are not sure what type of spare wheel your vehicle has, do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).

WARNING: Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

If the spare wheel is the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, you can fit the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.

If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, it has a label showing the maximum driving speed limit.

Refer to the following information before changing the road wheel.

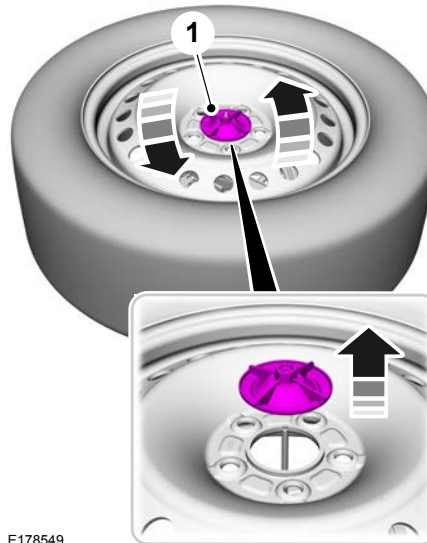
Note: Your vehicle may exhibit some different driving characteristics if you fit the spare wheel.

Note: The ground clearance of your vehicle may be reduced when the spare wheel is fitted. Take care when parking next to a curb.

Note: The spare wheel is located under the floor cover in the luggage compartment.

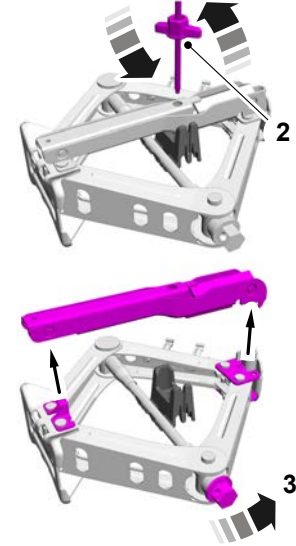
Note: If the spare wheel is fitted to your vehicle, do not drive through an automatic car wash.

Note: If the spare wheel is fitted to your vehicle, drive the shortest distance possible.



E178549

1. Turn the spare wheel securing nut counterclockwise and remove it. Remove the wheel from the spare wheel well.

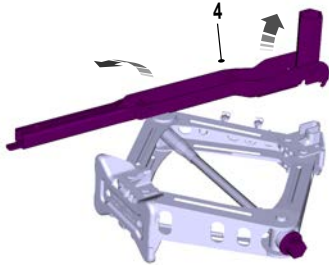


E178548

2. Turn the vehicle jack securing bolt counterclockwise and remove it.

Wheels and Tires

3. Turn the vehicle jack screw clockwise to remove the vehicle jack handle and lug nut tool from the vehicle jack.



E245204

4. Unfold the vehicle jack handle and the hexagonal end into the correct position prior to use. Use the hexagonal end to operate the vehicle jack screw and to remove the lug nuts.

Note: Use the hook at the hexagonal end to remove the wheel trim.

Vehicles Without a Spare Wheel

Vehicles without a spare wheel are fitted with a temporary mobility kit. See **Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit** (page 328).

Note: Vehicles with a temporary mobility kit do not have a spare wheel, vehicle jack or wheel brace.

Vehicle Jack

WARNING: The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing wheels. Do not use the vehicle jack other than when you are changing a wheel in an emergency.

WARNING: Check that the vehicle jack is not damaged or deformed and the thread is lubricated and clean.

WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.

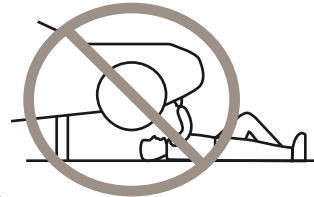
WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

WARNING: Use a jack with a minimum lifting capacity of 1,500 kg (3,307 lb) and a lifting plate with a minimum diameter of 80 mm (3.1 in).

WARNING: Do not work on your vehicle when the jack is the only support. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.

WARNING: No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

WARNING: Do not get under a vehicle that is only supported by a vehicle jack.



E166722

Wheels and Tires

Workshop Type Hydraulic Trolley Jack



WARNING: Use a jack with a minimum lifting capacity of 1,500 kg (3,307 lb) and a lifting plate with a minimum diameter of 80 mm (3.1 in).

We recommend you use a workshop type hydraulic trolley jack for changing between summer and winter tires.



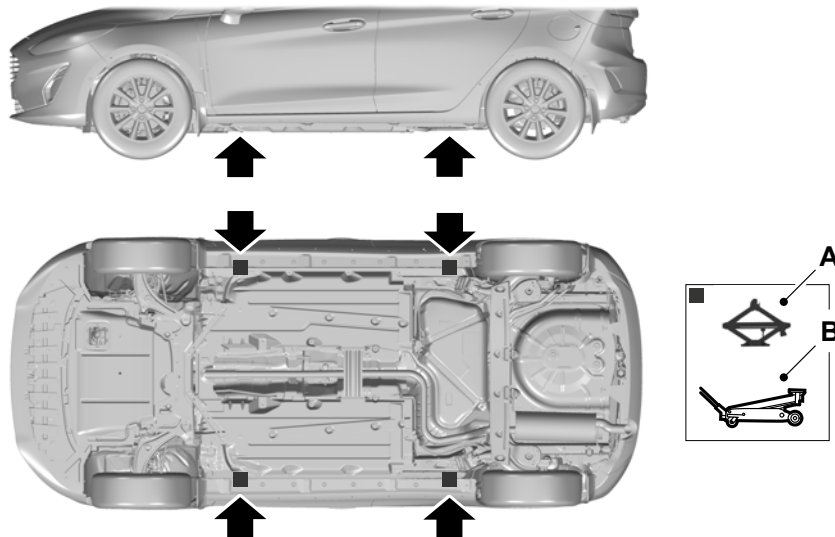
Refer to vehicle jack manufacturer's instructions.

Jacking and Lifting Points



WARNING: You must use the specified jacking points.

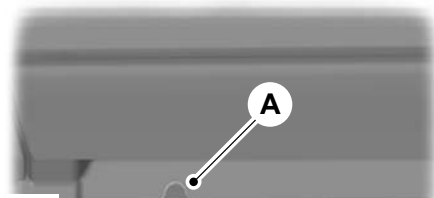
Wheels and Tires



E283868

- A Emergency use only.
- B Maintenance.

Wheels and Tires



E93184

Indentations in the sills show the location of the jacking points.

All Vehicles - Excluding: Active, ST and ST Line

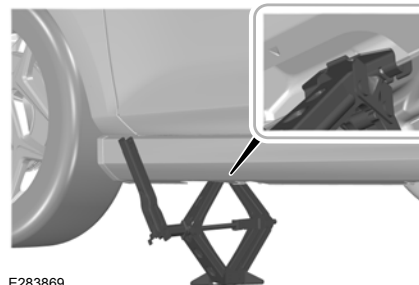


E92932



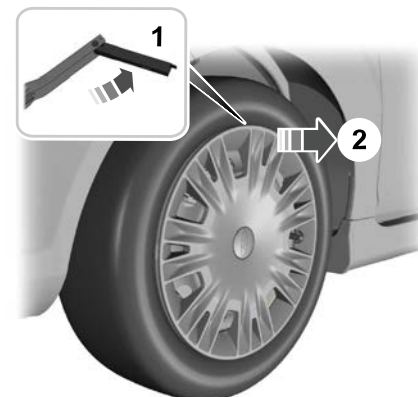
E93020

Active, ST and ST Line



E283869

Removing the Wheel Trim



E285279

1. Unfold the lug nut wrench.
2. Use the tongue on the lug nut wrench to remove the wheel trim.

Wheels and Tires

Removing a Road Wheel

WARNING: Park your vehicle in such a position that neither the traffic nor you are hindered or endangered.

WARNING: Park your vehicle so that you do not obstruct the flow of traffic or place yourself in any danger and set up a warning triangle.

WARNING: Make sure that your vehicle is on firm and level ground with the front wheels pointing straight ahead.

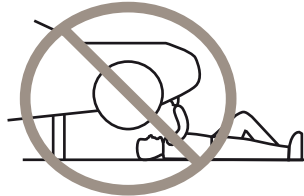
WARNING: Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake.

WARNING: If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P).

WARNING: Make sure all passengers are out of your vehicle.

WARNING: Chock the diagonally opposite wheel to the punctured tire with an appropriate wheel block or wheel chock.

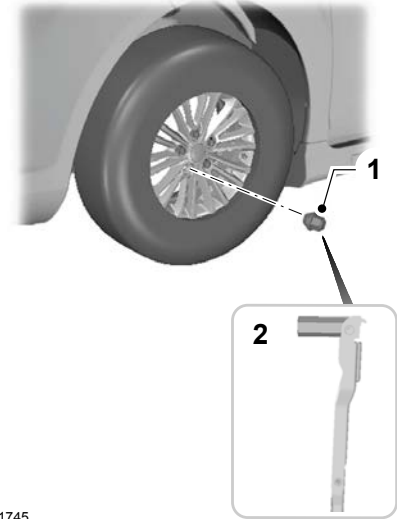
WARNING: Do not work on your vehicle when the jack is the only support. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.



E166722

WARNING: Make sure that the vehicle jack is vertical to the jacking point and the base is flat on the ground.

1. Install the locking lug nut key.



E181745

2. Loosen the lug nuts.
3. Raise your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
4. Remove the lug nuts and the road wheel.

Note: Do not lay alloy wheels face down on the ground. This may damage the paint.

Wheels and Tires

Installing a Road Wheel

⚠ WARNING: When you install a wheel, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

⚠ WARNING: Make sure that the arrows on directional tires point in the direction of rotation when your vehicle is moving forward. If you have to fit a spare tire with the arrows pointing in the opposite direction have the tire refitted as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING: Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid.

⚠ WARNING: Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel lugs and nuts. This can cause the lug nuts to loosen while driving.

⚠ WARNING: Do not fit run flat tires on vehicles that were not originally fitted with them. Contact an authorized dealer for more details about compatibility.

⚠ WARNING: Do not install alloy wheels using lug nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

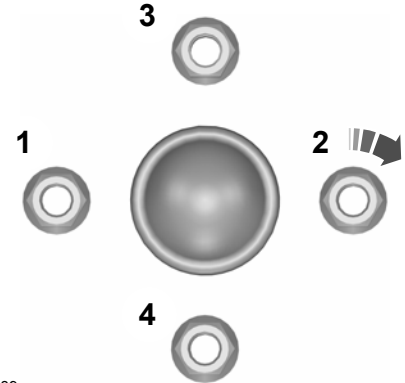
⚠ WARNING: Have the lug nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING: Only use the specific lug nuts and wheels supplied with your vehicle. If in doubt, contact an authorized dealer.

Note: *The lug nuts of alloy wheels and spoked steel wheels can also be used for the steel spare wheel for a short time (maximum two weeks).*

Note: *Make sure that the cones on the lug nuts are against the wheel.*

1. Install the wheel.
2. Install the lug nuts finger tight.
3. Install the locking lug nut key.



E90589

4. Install all of the lug nuts and partially tighten them in the sequence shown.
5. Lower your vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.
6. Fully tighten all of the lug nuts in the sequence shown. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 328).
7. Install the wheel trim.

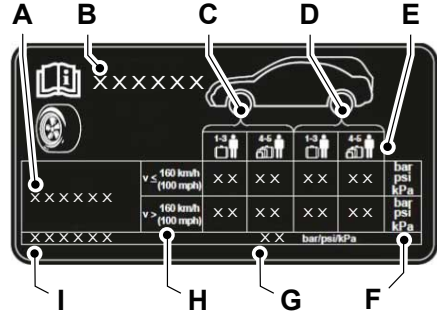
Wheels and Tires

TIRE PRESSURES - 1.0L ECOBOOST™, MANUAL TRANSMISSION

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.



E254054

- A Tire size.
- B Vehicle model.

- C Front tire pressure.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Vehicle load.
- F Measure unit.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Intended constant vehicle speed.
- I Spare wheel tire size.

Wheels and Tires

Up to 160 km/h (100 mph)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
195/60R15 88V Winter/All Season	2.1 (30)	1.8 (26)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
195/60R15 88V Summer	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
195/55R16 87H	2.4 (35)	2.1 (30)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)
195/55R16 87V	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)
195/55R16 91V XL	2.1 (30)	1.8 (26)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)
205/45R17 88V XL Summer	2.5 (36)	1.8 (26)	2.5 (36)	2.6 (38)
205/45R17 88V XL All Season	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.4 (35)	2.6 (38)
205/45R17 88Y XL	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.4 (35)	2.6 (38)
205/40R18 86W XL	2.5 (36)	1.8 (26)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)
205/40R18 86Y XL	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)

Wheels and Tires

Continuous Speed in Excess of 160 km/h (100 mph) or With Trailer Towing up to 100 km/h (60 mph)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
195/60R15 88V Winter/All Season	2.1 (30)	2 (29)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
195/60R15 88V Summer	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
195/55R16 87H	2.4 (35)	2.1 (30)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)
195/55R16 87V	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)
195/55R16 91V XL	2.1 (30)	2 (29)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)
205/45R17 88V XL Summer	2.5 (36)	2 (29)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)
205/45R17 88V XL All Season	2.5 (36)	2 (29)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)
205/45R17 88Y XL	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.4 (35)	2.6 (38)
205/40R18 86W XL	2.6 (38)	2 (29)	2.7 (39)	2.8 (41)
205/40R18 86Y XL	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)

Wheels and Tires

Temporary Spare Wheel (If Equipped)



WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

Tire Size	bar (psi)
175/65R14 86T XL	3.2 (46)

Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

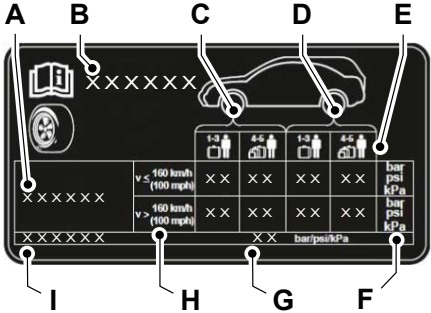
TIRE PRESSURES - 1.0L ECOBOOST™, AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: *You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.*

Wheels and Tires



- A Tire size.
- B Vehicle model.
- C Front tire pressure.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Vehicle load.
- F Measure unit.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Intended constant vehicle speed.
- I Spare wheel tire size.

E254054

Up to 160 km/h (100 mph)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
195/60R15 88V Winter/All Season	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
195/60R15 88V Summer	2.6 (38)	1.8 (26)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
195/55R16 87H	2.4 (35)	2.1 (30)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)
195/55R16 87V	2.6 (38)	1.8 (26)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)

Wheels and Tires

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
195/55R16 91V XL	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)
205/45R17 88V XL Summer	2.5 (36)	1.8 (26)	2.5 (36)	2.6 (38)
205/45R17 88V XL All Season	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.4 (35)	2.6 (38)
205/45R17 88Y XL	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.4 (35)	2.6 (38)
205/40R18 86W XL	2.5 (36)	1.8 (26)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)
205/40R18 86Y XL	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)

Continuous Speed in Excess of 160 km/h (100 mph) or With Trailer Towing up to 100 km/h (60 mph)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
195/60R15 88V Winter/All Season	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
195/60R15 88V Summer	2.6 (38)	2 (29)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
195/55R16 87H	2.4 (35)	2.1 (30)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)
195/55R16 87V	2.6 (38)	2 (29)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)

Wheels and Tires

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
195/55R16 91V XL	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)
205/45R17 88V XL Summer	2.5 (36)	2 (29)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)
205/45R17 88V XL All Season	2.5 (36)	2 (29)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)
205/45R17 88Y XL	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.4 (35)	2.6 (38)
205/40R18 86W XL	2.6 (38)	2 (29)	2.7 (39)	2.8 (41)
205/40R18 86Y XL	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)

Temporary Spare Wheel (If Equipped)



WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

Tire Size	bar (psi)
175/65R14 86T XL	3.2 (46)

Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

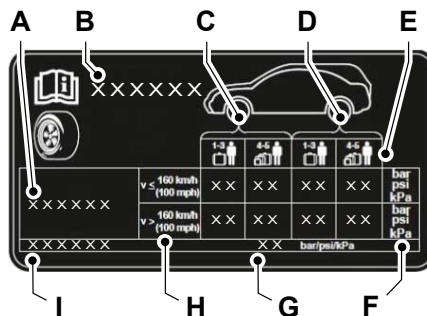
Wheels and Tires

TIRE PRESSURES - 1.1L

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.



E254054

- A Tire size.
- B Vehicle model.

- C Front tire pressure.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Vehicle load.
- F Measure unit.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Intended constant vehicle speed.
- I Spare wheel tire size.

Wheels and Tires

Up to 160 km/h (100 mph)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
195/60R15 88V Winter/All Season	2.1 (30)	1.8 (26)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
195/60R15 88V Summer	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
195/55R16 87H	2.4 (35)	2.1 (30)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)
195/55R16 87V	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)
195/55R16 91V XL	2.1 (30)	1.8 (26)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)
205/45R17 88V XL Summer	2.5 (36)	1.8 (26)	2.5 (36)	2.6 (38)
205/45R17 88V XL All Season	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.4 (35)	2.6 (38)
205/45R17 88Y XL	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.4 (35)	2.6 (38)
205/40R18 86W XL	2.5 (36)	1.8 (26)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)
205/40R18 86Y XL	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)

Wheels and Tires

Continuous Speed in Excess of 160 km/h (100 mph) or With Trailer Towing up to 100 km/h (60 mph)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
195/60R15 88V Winter/All Season	2.1 (30)	2 (29)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
195/60R15 88V Summer	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
195/55R16 87H	2.4 (35)	2.1 (30)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)
195/55R16 87V	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)
195/55R16 91V XL	2.1 (30)	2 (29)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)
205/45R17 88V XL Summer	2.5 (36)	2 (29)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)
205/45R17 88V XL All Season	2.5 (36)	2 (29)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)
205/45R17 88Y XL	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.4 (35)	2.6 (38)
205/40R18 86W XL	2.6 (38)	2 (29)	2.7 (39)	2.8 (41)
205/40R18 86Y XL	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)

Wheels and Tires

Temporary Spare Wheel (If Equipped)



WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

Tire Size	bar (psi)
175/65R14 86T XL	3.2 (46)

Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

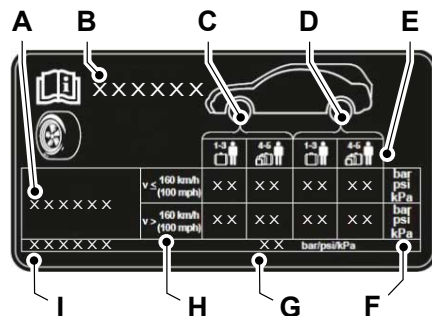
TIRE PRESSURES - 1.5L DIESEL

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.

Wheels and Tires



E254054

- A Tire size.
- B Vehicle model.
- C Front tire pressure.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Vehicle load.
- F Measure unit.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Intended constant vehicle speed.
- I Spare wheel tire size.

Up to 160 km/h (100 mph)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
195/60R15 88V Winter/All Season	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
195/60R15 88V Summer	2.6 (38)	1.8 (26)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
195/55R16 87H	2.4 (35)	2.1 (30)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)
195/55R16 87V	2.6 (38)	1.8 (26)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)

Wheels and Tires

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
195/55R16 91V XL	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)
205/45R17 88V XL Summer	2.5 (36)	1.8 (26)	2.5 (36)	2.6 (38)
205/45R17 88V XL All Season	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.4 (35)	2.6 (38)
205/45R17 88Y XL	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.4 (35)	2.6 (38)
205/40R18 86W XL	2.5 (36)	1.8 (26)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)
205/40R18 86Y XL	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)

Continuous Speed in Excess of 160 km/h (100 mph) or With Trailer Towing up to 100 km/h (60 mph)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
195/60R15 88V Winter/All Season	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
195/60R15 88V Summer	2.6 (38)	2 (29)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
195/55R16 87H	2.4 (35)	2.1 (30)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)
195/55R16 87V	2.6 (38)	2 (29)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)

Wheels and Tires

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
195/55R16 91V XL	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)
205/45R17 88V XL Summer	2.5 (36)	2 (29)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)
205/45R17 88V XL All Season	2.5 (36)	2 (29)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)
205/45R17 88Y XL	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.4 (35)	2.6 (38)
205/40R18 86W XL	2.6 (38)	2 (29)	2.7 (39)	2.8 (41)
205/40R18 86Y XL	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)

Temporary Spare Wheel (If Equipped)



WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

Tire Size	bar (psi)
175/65R14 86T XL	3.2 (46)

Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

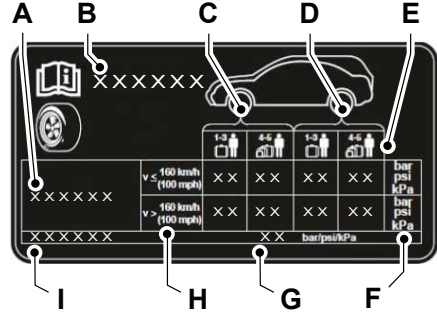
Wheels and Tires

TIRE PRESSURES - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.



E254054

- A Tire size.
- B Vehicle model.

- C Front tire pressure.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Vehicle load.
- F Measure unit.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Intended constant vehicle speed.
- I Spare wheel tire size.

Wheels and Tires

Up to 160 km/h (100 mph)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
195/60R15 88V	2 (29)	2 (29)	2 (29)	2 (29)
205/45R17 88Y XL	2.5 (36)	2.2 (32)	2.6 (38)	2.3 (33)
205/40R18 86Y XL	2.5 (36)	1.9 (28)	2.6 (38)	2.3 (33)

Continuous Speed in Excess of 160 km/h (100 mph) or With Trailer Towing up to 100 km/h (60 mph)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
195/60R15 88V	2 (29)	2 (29)	2 (29)	2 (29)
205/45R17 88Y XL	2.5 (36)	2.2 (32)	2.6 (38)	2.3 (33)
205/40R18 86 Y XL	2.5 (36)	2.1 (30)	2.6 (38)	2.3 (33)

Wheels and Tires

Temporary Spare Wheel (If Equipped)



WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

Tire Size	bar (psi)
T125/80R15 95M	3.2 (46)

Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

LUG NUTS

Lug Nut Torque

Nm (lb.ft)
135 (100)

Locking Lug Nuts

You can obtain a replacement locking lug nut key and replacement locking lug nuts from an authorized dealer using the reference number certificate.

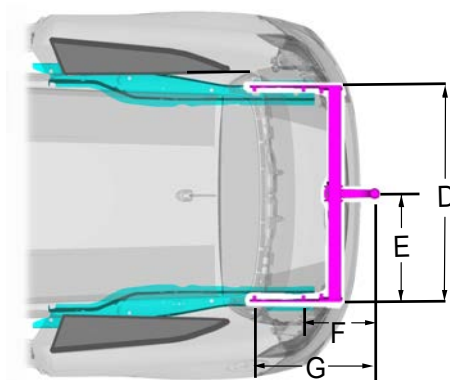
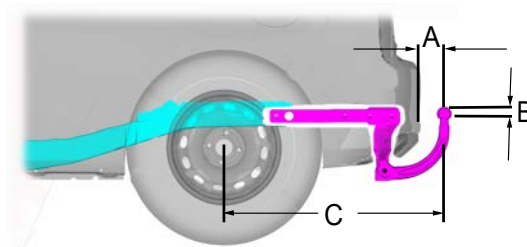
Capacities and Specifications

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - EXCLUDING: ACTIVE/VAN

Dimension Description	Dimension
Overall length.	4,040–4,068 mm (159.1–160.2 in)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	1,941 mm (76.4 in)
Overall height excluding the antenna.	1,464–1,498 mm (57.6–59.0 in)
Wheelbase.	2,493 mm (98.1 in)
Front track.	1,503–1,513 mm (59.2–59.6 in)
Rear track.	1,466–1,476 mm (57.7–58.1 in)

Capacities and Specifications

TOWBAR DIMENSIONS



E237445

Capacities and Specifications

Measurement	Dimension Description	mm (in)
A	Bumper to center of tow ball.	75 (3.0)
B	Attachment point to center of tow ball.	9 (0.4)
C	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	783 (30.8)
D	Distance between side members.	1,032 (40.6)
E	Center of tow ball to side member.	516 (20.3)
F	Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.	339 (13.3)
G	Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point.	573 (22.6)

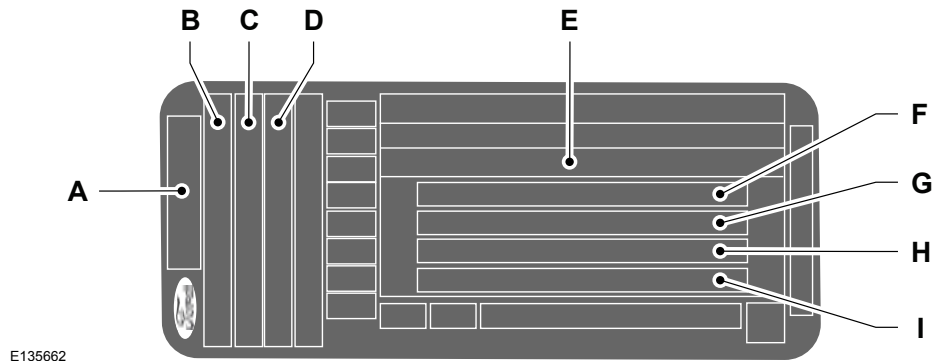
Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight

Powertrain	kg (lb)
1.0L EcoBoost.	65 (143)
1.0L EcoBoost. ¹	45 (99)
1.1L Duratec.	65 (143)
1.5L Duratorq-TDCi 85PS.	45 (99)
1.5L Duratorq-TDCi 120PS.	40 (88)

¹Vehicles with automatic transmission.

Capacities and Specifications

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE



- A Model.
- B Variant.
- C Engine designation.
- D Engine power and emission level.
- E Vehicle identification number.
- F Gross vehicle weight.
- G Gross train weight.

Capacities and Specifications

- H Maximum front axle weight.
- I Maximum rear axle weight.

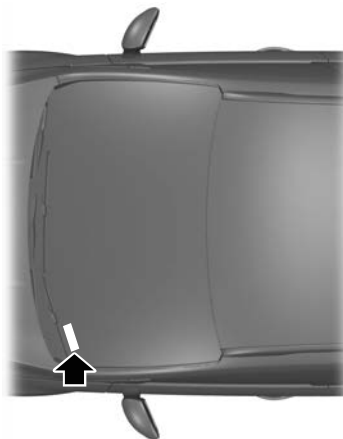
The vehicle identification plate is within the right-hand door aperture.

Note: *The vehicle identification plate may vary to that shown.*

Note: *Information on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.*

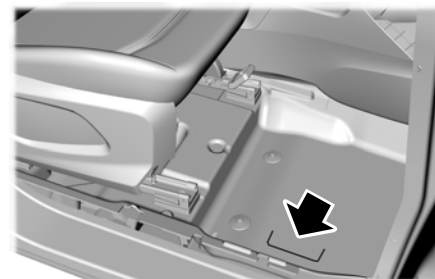
VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

You can find the vehicle identification number at the following locations.



E163915

On the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



E163913

Stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, in front of the front seat.

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

Use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

Capacities and Specifications

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

Engine

Engine Oil

Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter	Excluding the Oil Filter
All.	4.6 L (1.0 gal)	4.4 L (1.0 gal)

Note: The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum is 1 L (0.2 gal).

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B

Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B, you can top-up with a SAE 5W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Note: Do not use more than 0.5 L (0.1 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

Capacities and Specifications

Engine Coolant

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	5.8 L (1.3 gal)

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium FU7J-19544-xx	WSS-M97B44-D

Fuel Tank

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	42 L (9.2 gal)

Washer Reservoir

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	3 L (0.7 gal)

Capacities and Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	WSS-M14P19-A

Brake System

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.1L DURATEC

Use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

Capacities and Specifications

Engine

Engine Oil

Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter	Excluding the Oil Filter
All.	4.1 L (0.9 gal)	4 L (0.9 gal)

Note: The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum is 1 L (0.2 gal).

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B

Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B, you can top-up with a SAE 5W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Note: Do not use more than 0.5 L (0.1 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

Engine Coolant

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	5.5 L (1.2 gal)

Capacities and Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium FU7J-19544-xx	WSS-M97B44-D

Fuel Tank

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	42 L (9.2 gal)

Washer Reservoir

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	3 L (0.7 gal)

Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	WSS-M14P19-A

Capacities and Specifications

Brake System

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL

Use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

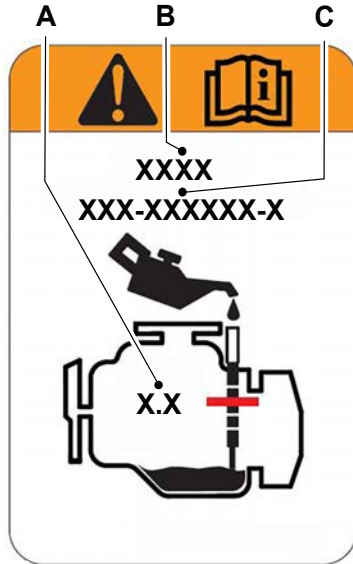
- Component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

Engine

Engine Oil

An engine oil viscosity grade and specification label is on the underside of the hood.

Capacities and Specifications



- A Engine oil fill capacity including the oil filter.
- B Engine oil viscosity grade.
- C Engine oil specification.

Adding Engine Oil

Only add engine oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade in small quantities of no more than 0.5 L (0.1 gal).

To avoid overfilling, wait for one minute after each refill step to allow the engine oil to flow into the oil pan and register on the engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 307).

E248032

Capacities and Specifications

Engine Coolant

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	6.1 L (1.3 gal)

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium FU7J-19544-xx	WSS-M97B44-D

Fuel Tank

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	40 L (8.8 gal)

Washer Reservoir

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	3 L (0.7 gal)

Capacities and Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	WSS-M14P19-A

Brake System

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

Use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

Capacities and Specifications

Engine

Engine Oil

Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter	Excluding the Oil Filter
All.	6.1 L (1.3 gal)	5.6 L (1.2 gal)

Note: The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum is 0.9 L (0.2 gal).

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B

Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B, you can top-up with a SAE 5W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Note: Do not use more than 0.5 L (0.1 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

Engine Coolant

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	6 L (1.3 gal)

Capacities and Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium FU7J-19544-xx	WSS-M97B44-D

Fuel Tank

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	45 L (9.9 gal)

Washer Reservoir

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	3 L (0.7 gal)

Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	WSS-M14P19-A

Capacities and Specifications

Brake System

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Exterior Lamps

Bulb	Specification	Power (Watts)
Front direction indicator. ¹	PY21W.	21
Front direction indicator. ²	PY21W.	21
Front direction indicator. ³	LED.	-
Daytime running lamp. ¹	H15.	15/55
Daytime running lamp. ²	LED.	-
Daytime running lamp. ³	LED.	-
Low beam headlamp. ¹	H7.	55

Capacities and Specifications

Bulb	Specification	Power (Watts)
Low beam headlamp. ²	H7.	55
Low beam headlamp. ³	LED.	-
High beam headlamp. ¹	H15.	15/55
High beam headlamp. ²	H1.	55
High beam headlamp. ³	LED.	-
Front fog lamp.	H8.	35
Side direction indicator. ⁴	WY5W.	5
Rear lamp and stoplamp.	P21/5W.	21/5
Rear lamp and stoplamp. ⁵	LED.	-
High mounted stoplamp.	LED.	-
Rear direction indicator.	PY21W.	21
Rear fog lamp.	P21W.	21

Capacities and Specifications

Bulb	Specification	Power (Watts)
Reversing lamp.	W16W.	16
License plate lamp.	LED.	-

¹ Reflector headlamp. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 316).

² Projector headlamp. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 316).

³ LED headlamp. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 316).

⁴ We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer to replace the bulb.

⁵ High series.

Note: *We recommend that you have LEDs changed by an authorized dealer.*

Interior Lamps

Bulb	Specification	Power (Watts)
Glove compartment lamp.	LED.	-
Interior lamp.	LED.	-
Vanity mirror lamp.	LED.	-
Luggage compartment lamp.	LED.	-

Note: *We recommend that you have LEDs changed by an authorized dealer.*

Capacities and Specifications

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO ₂ Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
7.8–4.8 (36.2–58.9)	5.1–3.5 (55.4–80.7)	6.1–4 (46.3–70.6)	83–138

Capacities and Specifications

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - 1.1L DURATEC

Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO ₂ Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
6.8–5.4 (41.5–52.3)	4.6–3.7 (61.4–76.3)	5.4–4.4 (52.3–64.2)	101–121

Capacities and Specifications

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL

Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO ₂ Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
4.8–3.5 (58.9–80.7)	4.1–3 (68.9–94.2)	4.4–3.2 (64.2–88.3)	82–112

Capacities and Specifications

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO ₂ Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
7.6 (37.2)	5.1 (55.4)	6 (47.1)	136

Capacities and Specifications

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES

Fuel Economy and CO2 Emissions

The declared fuel/energy consumptions, CO₂-Emissions and electric range are determined according to the technical requirements and specifications of the European Regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as last amended. Light Duty Vehicle type-approved using the World Harmonised Light Vehicle Test Procedure (WLTP) will have Fuel/Energy Consumption and CO₂-Emission information for New European Drive Cycle (NEDC) and WLTP. WLTP will fully replace the NEDC latest by the end of the year 2020. The applied standard test procedures enable comparison between different vehicle types and different manufacturers.

During NEDC phase-out, WLTP fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions are being correlated back to NEDC. There will be some variance to the previous fuel economy and emissions as some elements of the tests have altered, so the same car might have different fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions.

European Directive 1999/94/EC

In addition to the fuel efficiency of a car, driving behaviour as well as other non-technical factors play a role in determining a car's fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions. CO₂ is the main greenhouse gas responsible for global warming. A guide on fuel economy and CO₂ emissions which contains data for all new passenger car models is available at any point of sale free of charge.

Connected Vehicle

WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the FordPass app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, the fuel level and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require a subscription. For additional information, see the FordPass app. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, evolving cellular networks or evolving regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

What Is the Modem



The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

Enabling and Disabling the Modem

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Connectivity settings**.
4. Switch connectivity features on or off.

Connecting FordPass to the Modem

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the FordPass app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option for vehicle details.
5. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
6. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your FordPass account.
7. Confirm that FordPass account is connected to the modem .

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

1. Press **Settings**.
2. Press **Wi-Fi**.
3. Switch **System Wi-Fi** on.
4. Press **View available networks**.
5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

Note: Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.

Connected Vehicle

CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING - VEHICLES WITH: MODEM

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot confirm the connection of my Ford-Pass account to the modem.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– Modem is not enabled.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Switch connectivity features on.– Weak network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

Connected Vehicle

CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3/SYNC 2.5

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect to a Wi-Fi network.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– Password error.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Enter the correct network password.– Weak network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.– Multiple access points in range with the same SSID.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Use a unique name for your SSID. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.
The Wi-Fi connection disconnects after successful connection.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– Weak network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
I am close to a Wi-Fi hotspot but the network signal strength is weak.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– Obstructed network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi hotspot.• If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi hotspot or open the windows that are facing the hotspot.• If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the hotspot.• If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door.

Connected Vehicle

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot see a network in the list of available networks that I expect to see.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– Hidden network.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Make the network visible and try again.
I cannot see the Wi-Fi hotspot name when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– System limitation.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Make sure Wi-Fi hotspot visibility is on.• The system does not provide a Wi-Fi hotspot at this time.
Software downloads take too long.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– Weak network signal<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.– Wi-Fi hotspot in high demand or has a slow Internet connection.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Use a more reliable Wi-Fi hotspot.
The system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent but the software does not update.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– No software update available.– Wi-Fi network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Test the connection using another device. If the network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions, contact the network service provider.

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

CREATING A VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT

You can create a Wi-Fi hotspot in your vehicle and allow devices to connect to it for access to the Internet.

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Vehicle Hotspot**.

Note: The vehicle hotspot default setting is on.

4. Select **Settings**.
5. Select **Edit**.
6. Select **Wi-Fi visibility**.

Note: The Wi-Fi Visibility default setting is on.

Finding the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name and Password

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Vehicle Hotspot**.
4. Select **Settings**.

Note: The SSID is the hotspot name.

5. Select **View password**.

Connecting a Device to the Wi-Fi Hotspot

1. On your device, turn on Wi-Fi and select the hotspot from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
2. When prompted, enter the password.

Purchasing a Data Plan

1. Connect a device to the hotspot.

Note: The vehicle network carrier's portal opens on your device.

2. If the portal does not open on your device, open a website and it redirects to the vehicle network carrier's portal.

Note: Secure websites do not redirect.

Note: If you have an active plan, the system does not redirect to the vehicle network carrier's portal when you connect a device. Visit the vehicle network carrier's website to purchase more data.

Note: If data usage information is available in the vehicle hotspot menu, it is approximate.

Note: If you carry out a master reset, the system does not remove your vehicle from your vehicle network carrier's account. To remove your vehicle from the account, contact your vehicle network carrier.

Note: The vehicle network carrier provides Vehicle Hotspot services, subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.

CHANGING THE VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT NAME OR PASSWORD

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Vehicle Hotspot**.
4. Select **Settings**.
5. Select **Edit**.
6. Select **Change SSID Name**.
7. Enter your required SSID.
8. Select **Done**.
9. Select **Change Password**.
10. Enter your required password.
11. Select **Done**.

Audio System

AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC

Switching the Audio Unit On and Off



Adjusting the Volume



Selecting the Radio



Press the button to select radio mode.

Press the button again to display the available radio sources. Repeatedly press the button to scroll through the available radio sources.

Changing Radio Stations

Manual Tuning



E248947

Note: You can change radio stations using the seek buttons.

Note: You can recall radio stations using the numeric preset buttons.

Selecting Media



Press the button to select media mode.

Press the button again to display the available media sources. Repeatedly press the button to scroll through the available media sources.

Scrolling Through the Menu Options



E248947

Audio System

Selecting a Menu Option



E248946

Returning to the Previous Screen



Seek Up and Next Track Button



Select to skip to the next track.
Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.

Seek Down and Previous Track Button



Select to return to the beginning of a track.
Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

Pausing or Playing Media



In media mode, press the button to pause playback. Press the button again to resume playback.

In radio mode, press the button to mute the radio. Press the button again to unmute.

Switching the Screen On and Off



System Settings



Sound Settings



Press the button to adjust the sound settings. You can optimize the sound for different seating positions.

You can also activate and set the sensitivity of the speed compensated volume.

Using a Cell Phone



You can make a call from a recent call list, contact list or dial a number.

AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

Switching the Audio Unit On and Off



Audio System

Adjusting the Volume



Changing Radio Stations Manual Tuning



Note: You can change radio stations using the seek buttons.

Note: You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons on the touchscreen.

Seek Up and Next Track Button



Select to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.

Seek Down and Previous Track Button



Select to return to the beginning of a track.

Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

Pausing or Playing Media



Select to play a track. Press the button again to pause the track.

In radio mode, press the button to mute the radio. Press the button again to unmute.

Switching the Screen On and Off



Sound Settings



Press the button to adjust the sound settings. You can optimize the sound for different seating positions.

You can also activate and set the sensitivity of the speed compensated volume.

Audio System

AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

Switching the Audio Unit On and Off



Adjusting the Volume



Changing Radio Stations Manual Tuning



Note: You can change radio stations using the seek buttons.

Note: You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons on the touchscreen.

Seek Up and Next Track Button



Select to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.

Seek Down and Previous Track Button



Select to return to the beginning of a track.

Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

Pausing or Playing Media



Select to play a track. Press the button again to pause the track.

In radio mode, press the button to mute the radio. Press the button again to unmute.

Switching the Screen On and Off



Sound Settings



Press the button to adjust the sound settings. You can optimize the sound for different seating positions.

You can also activate and set the sensitivity of the speed compensated volume.

Audio System

AM/FM RADIO - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC

Selecting a Radio Source



Press the button to display the available radio sources.

Repeatedly press the button to scroll to the desired radio source.

Press the **OK** button.

Station Presets

To store a radio station, press and hold one of the numeric preset buttons.

Note: Six presets can be stored for each radio source.

Manually Changing Radio Stations



E248947

Rotate the control to change the frequency.

Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Selecting a Station from the List

Press the **OK** button to view available stations.

AM/FM RADIO - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

Using the Radio



Select the audio option on the feature bar.

Selecting a Radio Station From a List

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select **AM** or **FM**.
3. Select **Stations**.
4. Select a radio station from the list.

Audio System

Manually Changing Radio Stations



Rotate the control to change the frequency.

Note: In FM mode, rotating the control changes the station.

Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Storing a Radio Station

Press and hold one of the preset buttons on the touchscreen.

Note: The radio briefly mutes to indicate the station has been stored.

DIGITAL RADIO - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC

Selecting a Radio Source



Press the button to display the available radio sources.

Repeatedly press the button to scroll to the desired radio source.

Press the **OK** button.

Station Presets

To store a station, press and hold one of the numeric preset buttons.

Note: Six presets can be stored for each radio source.

Manually Changing Stations



E248947

Rotate the control to change the station.

Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Audio System

Selecting a Station from the List

Press the **OK** button to view available ensembles. Select the desired ensemble and station from the list.

DIGITAL RADIO - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

Using the Radio



Select the audio option on the feature bar.

Selecting a Radio Station From a List

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select **DAB**.
3. Select **Stations**.
4. Select a radio station from the list.

Manually Changing Radio Stations



Rotate the control to change the frequency.

Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Storing a Radio Station

Press and hold one of the preset buttons on the touchscreen.

Note: The radio briefly mutes to indicate the station has been stored.

AUDIO UNIT CLOCK AND DATE DISPLAYS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC

Adjusting the Clock



Press the button.

Select the clock and follow the instructions on the screen.

AUDIO UNIT CLOCK AND DATE DISPLAYS - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Clock**.
2. Adjust the clock.

Audio System

CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC

Pairing a Device



Press the button.

Select Bluetooth and follow the instructions on the screen.

Note: When pairing a new device, you can choose to download contacts, set this as the primary device and enable Emergency Assistance.

CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

Go to the settings menu on your device and switch Bluetooth on.



Select the settings options on the feature bar.

1. Select **Bluetooth**.
2. Switch Bluetooth on.

3. Select **Add a Bluetooth device**.

Note: A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your device.

4. Select your vehicle on your device.

Note: A number appears on your device and on the touchscreen.

5. Confirm that the number on your device matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your device.

COMPACT DISC PLAYER - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC

The compact disc player is in the glove compartment.

Compact disc players only play standard 12 cm (4.7 in) discs.

You can play MP3 and WMA discs.

Note: Discs can contain mixed audio file types.

Note: Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable CDs may not function correctly when used in the compact disc player.

Note: You should use a permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels on your homemade CDs.

Playing a CD



Press the button to display the menu.

Repeatedly press the button to scroll to the compact disc player.

Press the **OK** button.



Press the button to play a track. Press the button again to pause the track.



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of the track. Press the button repeatedly to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

Audio System

COMPACT DISC PLAYER - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

The compact disc player is in the glove compartment.

Compact disc players only play standard 12 cm (4.7 in) discs.

You can play MP3 and WMA discs.

Note: Discs can contain mixed audio file types.

Note: Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable CDs may not function correctly when used in the compact disc player.

Note: You should use a permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels on your homemade CDs.

Using the CD Player



Select the audio option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select **CD**.

Playing a CD



Press the button to play a track. Press the button again to pause the track.



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of the track. Press the button repeatedly to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

STREAMING BLUETOOTH AUDIO - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC

Selecting a Bluetooth Source



Press the button to display the menu.

Repeatedly press the button to scroll to the Bluetooth device.

Press the **OK** button.



Press the button to play the track. Press the button again to pause the track.



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of the track. Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

Note: Not all functions are supported by all phones.

STREAMING BLUETOOTH AUDIO - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.

Pair your device. See **Connecting a Bluetooth® Device** (page 399).



Select the audio option on the feature bar.

Select **Sources**.

Audio System



Select the bluetooth option.



Press the button to play the track.
Press the button again to pause the track.



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of the track.

Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

PLAYING MEDIA FROM A USB DEVICE - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC

Supported Audio File Formats

You can play audio file formats including MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC.

Note: *The NTFS file system is not supported.*

Selecting the USB Device



Press the button to display the menu.

Repeatedly press the button to scroll to your USB device.

Press the **OK** button.

Playing from the USB Device



Press the button to play a track.
Press the button again to pause the track.



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of a track.
Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

Sorting by Categories

You can also sort and play music by specific categories, for example artist or album.

Press the **OK** button to view the available categories.

PLAYING MEDIA FROM A USB DEVICE - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

Supported File Formats

The system supports the following file formats:

- MP3, M4A, M4B, WMA, WAV, AAC, FLAC, APE and AIFF audio file formats.
- ext2, exFAT, FAT, FAT32, NTFS and HFS+ file systems.

Selecting the USB Device

Connect your device to the USB port.



Select the audio option on the feature bar.

Select **Sources**.



Select the USB option.

Audio System

Playing from the USB Device



Press the button to play a track. Press the button again to pause the track.



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind through the track.

Sorting by Categories

You can also sort and play music by specific categories, for example artist or album.

USB PORT

USB ports may be in the following locations:

- On the instrument panel behind the audio unit display.
- On the instrument panel below the climate control. See **Visual Search** (page 19).
- In the center console.

You can use the USB port to charge a device only when the engine is running.

APPS - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

Note: We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges.

Note: We recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app.

Note: Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system.

Note: Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

Using Apple CarPlay

Switching Apple CarPlay On

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Apple CarPlay.

Switching Apple CarPlay Off



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Apple CarPlay preferences**.
2. Disable Apple CarPlay.

Using Apps on an iOS Device

Note: For more information about available apps, refer to the local Ford website.

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving.



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

Audio System

1. Switch Apple CarPlay off.
2. Connect your device to a USB port.
3. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through the system.

Note: If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

4. Select **Find mobile apps**.

Note: The system searches and connects to compatible apps that are running on your device.

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Using Android Auto

Switching Android Auto On

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: You might need to enable Android Auto from the settings menu.

Note: Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.

Switching Android Auto Off



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Android Auto preferences**.
2. Disable Android Auto.

Using Apps on an Android Device

Note: For more information about available apps, refer to the local Ford website.

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving.



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. Switch Android Auto off.
2. Pair your device.
3. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through the system.

Note: If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

4. Select **Find mobile apps**.

Note: The system searches and connects to compatible apps that are running on your device.

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Audio System

Apps Troubleshooting

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– Incompatible device.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• You will need an Android device with OS 2.3 or higher or an iOS 3GS device with iOS 5.0 or higher. Pair and connect your Android device to find AppLink compatible apps. Connect your iOS device to a USB port to find AppLink compatible apps.
I have a compatible device and it is correctly connected but the system still cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– AppLink compatible apps not installed on your device.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Download and install the latest version of the app.– AppLink compatible apps not running on your device.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Start the apps to allow the system to find them and make sure you sign in to any apps if required.– Incorrect app settings.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Check and adjust the app settings on your device and allow the system to access the app if required.
I have a compatible device, it is correctly connected and my apps are running but the system still cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– Apps failed to fully close.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Restart the apps and try again.
I have an Android device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– An issue on some older versions of the Android operating system could result in apps not being found.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Switch Bluetooth off and on again to force the system to reconnect to your device.

Audio System

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I have an iOS device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Cable connection issue. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disconnect the cable from your device, wait for a moment and then connect it again to force the system to reconnect to your device.
I have an Android device running a media app which the system has found but I cannot hear the sound or the sound is very quiet.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Device volume is low. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Turn the volume up on your device.
I have an Android device running a number of compatible apps but the system cannot find all of them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Device limitation. Some Android devices have a limited number of Bluetooth ports that apps can use to connect. If you have more apps running on your device than the number of available Bluetooth ports, the system cannot find all of them. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Close some of the apps to allow the system to find those that you want to use.

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

Phone Voice Service

This system allows you to use the voice recognition features of your phone and focus on your driving.



Press the voice control button on the steering wheel.

Note: This only works when connected via Bluetooth. See **Connecting a Bluetooth® Device** (page 399).

Note: When using voice recognition use the language set on the device.

Note: We recommend that you check your data plan before using your phone voice service through the system. Using them could result in additional charges.

Audio System

AUDIO SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system is not functioning.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">You can reset the system to restore functionality that has stopped working.<ul style="list-style-type: none">The system reset is designed to restore functionality and does not delete any personal data that you have stored.
I want to delete personal data from the system.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">A master reset is required to restore the system back to factory settings.<ul style="list-style-type: none">This deletes any personal data that you have stored.
The system is not up to date.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">The latest version has not been installed.<ul style="list-style-type: none">You can download the latest version or set the system to automatically update.

Resetting the System

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek up and the audio unit power buttons until the screen goes black.
2. Wait three minutes to allow the system to complete the reset.

Updating the System

Note: We may need to update operating system software on your vehicle, including security updates and bug fixes, to keep connected services current, like Vehicle Hotspot, without prior notice to you.

Updating the System Using a USB Drive

Downloading an Update

1. Go to the system update page on the local Ford website.
2. Download the update.

Note: The website notifies you if an update is available.

3. Insert a USB drive into your computer.

Note: The USB drive needs to be empty and meet the minimum requirements detailed on the website.

4. Follow the instructions provided to download the update to the USB drive.

Installing an Update

Note: You can use the system when an installation is in progress.

1. Disconnect all other USB devices from the USB ports.
2. Connect the USB drive with the update to a USB port.

Note: Installation starts automatically within 10 minutes.

Audio System

Updating the System Using a Wi-Fi Network Connection

Connecting to a Wi-Fi Network



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Wi-Fi**.
2. Select **View available networks**.
3. Select an available network.

Note: Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.

Switching Automatic System Updates On



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Automatic updates**.
2. Switch automatic system updates on.

The system is now set to check for and receive system updates when it is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

Note: You can use the system when a download is in progress.

Note: If the system is disconnected from the Wi-Fi network when a download is in progress, the download continues the next time the system is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

Master Reset



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select **General**.
2. Select **Master reset**.
3. Select **Continue**.

Note: If you carry out a master reset, the system does not remove your vehicle from your vehicle network carrier's account. To remove your vehicle from the account, contact your vehicle network carrier.

Note: If you carry out a master reset, the system removes any authorized users and personal data.

GENERAL INFORMATION



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

About SYNC

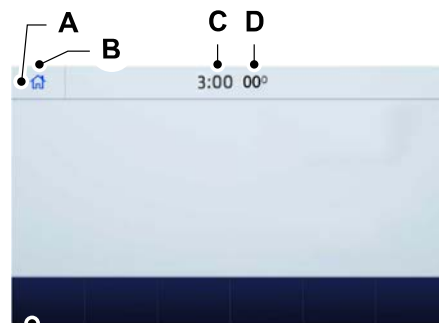
The system allows you to interact with the entertainment, information and communication systems on your vehicle using voice commands and a touchscreen. The system provides easy interaction with audio, phone, navigation, mobile apps and settings.

Note: You can switch the system on and use it for up to an hour without switching the ignition on.

Note: You can use the system after you switch the ignition off for up to 10 minutes or until you open a door.

Note: For your safety, some features are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h (3 mph).

Using the Touchscreen



E

- A Status bar.
- B Home screen.
- C Clock. See **Settings** (page 431).

- D Outside air temperature.
- E Feature bar.

Status Bar



Cell phone microphone muted.



Audio system muted.



Software update installed.



Wi-Fi connected.



Cell phone roaming.



Text message received.



Emergency Assistance off.



Cell phone network signal strength.



Vehicle data sharing on.



Vehicle location sharing on.



Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.



Traffic data source: Live traffic.



Traffic data source: Traffic broadcast.



Wireless charger active.

Feature Bar



Select to use the radio, a USB, a media player or a Bluetooth device. See **Entertainment** (page 418).



Select to adjust climate settings. See **Climate** (page 420).



Select to make calls and access the phonebook on your cell phone. See **Phone** (page 423).



Select to use the navigation system. See **Navigation** (page 425).



Select to search for and use compatible apps on your iOS or Android device. See **Apps** (page 430).



Select to adjust system settings. See **Settings** (page 431).

Cleaning the Touchscreen

See **Cleaning the Interior** (page 324).

Updating the System

Updating the System Using a USB Drive

Downloading an Update

1. Go to the SYNC update page on the local Ford website.
2. Download the update.

Note: The website notifies you if an update is available.

3. Insert a USB drive into your computer.

Note: The USB drive needs to be empty and meet the minimum requirements detailed on the website.

4. Follow the instructions provided to download the update to the USB drive.

Installing an Update

Note: You can use the system when installation is in progress.

1. Disconnect all other USB devices from the USB ports.
2. Connect the USB drive with the update to a USB port.

Note: Installation starts automatically within 10 minutes.

Updating the System Using a Wi-Fi Network Connection

Switching Automatic System Updates On

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Automatic updates**.
3. Switch **Automatic system updates** on.

The system is now set to check for and receive system updates when it is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

Note: You can use the system when download is in progress.

Note: If the system is disconnected from the Wi-Fi network when download is in progress, the download continues the next time the system is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

Connecting to a Wi-Fi Network

See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 387).

Additional Information and Assistance

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer or refer to the local Ford website.

General

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

The system allows you to interact with the entertainment, information and communication systems on your vehicle using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the steering wheel and focus on what is in front of you.



Press the voice control button on the steering wheel and wait for the voice prompt.

Note: Press the voice control button again to interrupt a voice prompt and begin speaking.

Note: Turn the volume control when a voice prompt plays to adjust the volume.

Note: Press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri on your iOS device.

The following voice commands are designed to help you from any screen:

- **List of commands**
- **Help**

The following tables list some of the more frequently used voice commands. For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website.

Voice Command	Description
___ list of commands	Get a list of voice commands for a specific feature. ¹
Cancel	Cancel an active voice session.
___ help	Get a list of voice commands for a specific feature. ¹
Back	Return to the previous screen.
Main menu	Go to the main menu.

SYNC™ 3

Voice Command	Description
Next page	Go to the next page.
Previous page	Go to the previous page.

¹ Add the name of the feature to the command.

Entertainment

Audio Source

Voice Command	Description
Radio	Use the radio.
CD Player	Use the CD player.
Bluetooth audio	Use a Bluetooth device.
USB	Use a USB or media player.

Radio

Voice Command	Description
AM	Listen to AM radio.
___ AM	Tune to a specific AM frequency. ¹
DAB	Listen to DAB radio.

SYNC™ 3

Voice Command	Description
FM	Listen to FM radio.
___ FM	Tune to a specific FM frequency. ¹

¹ Add the radio frequency to two decimal places to the command.

USB and Media Player

Voice Command	Description
Play album ___	Play your music by category. ¹
Play artist ___	
Play audiobook ___	
Play genre ___	
Play playlist ___	
Play podcast ___	
Play song ___	
Browse all albums	Browse music on a USB device.
Browse all artists	
Browse all audiobooks	
Browse all genres	

SYNC™ 3

Voice Command	Description
Browse all playlists	
Browse all podcasts	
Browse all tracks	
Browse album ____	Browse your music by category on a USB device. ¹
Browse artist ____	
Browse audiobook ____	
Browse genre ____	
Browse playlist ____	
Browse podcast ____	

¹Add an album name, artist name, audiobook name, genre name, playlist name, podcast name or track name to the command. Say the name exactly as it appears on your device.

Phone

Voice Command	Description
Pair phone	Pair a cell phone or Bluetooth enabled device.
Redial	Redial the last number that you dialed.
Dial ____	Dial a number. ¹

SYNC™ 3

Voice Command	Description
Call ____	Call a specific contact from your phonebook. ²
Call ____ ____	Call a specific contact from your phonebook at a specific location. ³
Listen to message	Listen to a text message.
Listen to message ____	Listen to a specific text message from a list of text messages.
Reply to message	Reply to the last text message.

¹ Add the number you want to dial to the command.

² Add a contact name from your phonebook to the command. Say the first and last name of your contact exactly as it appears on your device.

³ Add a contact name and location from your phonebook to the command. Say the first and last name of your contact exactly as it appears on your device.

Navigation (If Equipped)

Setting a Destination

Voice Command	Description
Find an address	Enter a destination address. When prompted, provide the house number, the street and city.
Find a POI	Search for a point of interest by name or by category.
Find nearest ____	Search for a nearby point of interest by category. ¹
Find a POI category	Search for a point of interest category. ¹
Destination home	Set your saved home address as your destination.
Destination work	Set your saved place of work as your destination.
Previous destinations	Display and select from a list of previous destinations.
Favourite destinations	Display and select from a list of favorite destinations.

¹ Add a point of interest category or the name of a major brand or chain to the command.

SYNC™ 3

Route Guidance

Voice Command	Description
Cancel route	Cancel the current route.
Reroute	Select an alternate route.
Repeat last instruction	Repeat the last guidance prompt.
Show route	Display an overview of the route.
Show map	Display the map on the touchscreen.
Show north up	Display a two-dimensional map with north toward the top of the touchscreen.
Show heading up	Display a two-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the top of the touchscreen.
Show 3D	Display a three-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the front.

Apps

General

Voice Command	Description
Mobile apps	Start an app. The system prompts your for the app name.
List apps	Get a list of apps running on your device.
Find apps	Search and connect to apps running on your device.

SYNC™ 3

Active App

Voice Command	Description
___ help	Get a list of voice commands for a specific app. ¹
Close ___	Close an app. ¹

¹Add an app name to the command.

Voice Settings

Voice Command	Description
Voice settings	Go to the voice settings menu.
Interaction mode standard	Switch long voice prompts on.
Interaction mode advanced	Switch short voice prompts on.
Call confirmation on	Switch call confirmation on. The system prompts you to confirm before making a call.
Call confirmation off	Switch call confirmation off. The system does not prompt you to confirm before making a call.
Voice command lists on	Switch the display of voice commands on.
Voice command lists off	Switch the display of voice commands off.

Automatic Blower Motor Speed Reduction

If necessary, the system decreases the blower motor speed when you are using voice commands to reduce the amount of background noise in your vehicle. It returns to normal when you are finished.

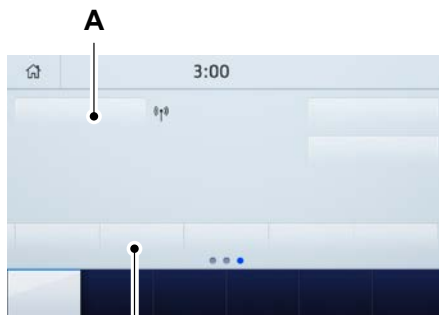
Switching Automatic Blower Motor Speed Reduction Off

Simultaneously press the **A/C** and recirculated air buttons.

ENTERTAINMENT



Select the audio option on the feature bar.



- A Audio source. Select to choose a different audio source.
- B Presets. Swipe left to view more presets.

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

Using the Radio

Setting an AM/FM Radio Station

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select **AM** or **FM**.



3. Rotate the control to change the frequency.

Selecting a FM Radio Station From a List

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select **FM**.
3. Select **Stations**.
4. Select a radio station from the list.

Selecting a Digital Radio Station From a List

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select **DAB**.

3. Select **Stations**.
4. Select an ensemble.
5. Select a radio station from the list.

Manually Changing Digital Radio Stations



Rotate the control to change the station.

Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Storing a Radio Station

Press and hold one of the preset buttons.

Note: The radio briefly mutes to indicate the station has been stored.

Note: You can add additional preset pages using the settings option on the feature bar.

Switching Traffic Announcements On

Select **Traffic (TA)**.

Note: If you switch traffic announcements on, traffic announcements broadcast by radio stations interrupt the current audio source to help you plan your route.

Streaming Music From a Bluetooth Device

Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.

Pair your device. See **Phone** (page 423).

Select **Sources**.



Select Bluetooth.

Searching for Tracks on a Bluetooth Device

Select **Browse**.

Select a track.

Note: Select the cover art to view information about the current track.

Playing Tracks on a Bluetooth Device in a Random Order



Select to play tracks in a random order.

Repeating Tracks on a Bluetooth Device



Select the repeat icon to repeat tracks.

Note: You can repeat one track or all tracks on an audio format Bluetooth device. You can repeat one track, all tracks or all tracks in one folder on a Bluetooth device.

Note: A small number one appears next to the repeat icon to indicate that a track is set to repeat. A small folder icon appears next to it to indicate that a folder is set to repeat.

Playing Music From a USB or Media Player

Connect your device to a USB port.

Select **Sources**.



Select USB.

Note: The system indexes your music before you can play it.

Searching for Tracks on a USB or Media Player

Select **Browse**.

Select a track.

Note: Select the cover art to view information about the current track.

Note: You can also browse by album, artist, audiobook, genre, playlist, podcast or track name.

Playing Tracks on a USB or Media Player in a Random Order



Select to play tracks in a random order.

Repeating Tracks on a USB or Media Player



Select the repeat icon to repeat tracks.

Note: You can repeat one track or all tracks on an audio format USB or media player. You can repeat one track, all tracks or all tracks in one folder on a USB or media player.

Note: A small number one appears next to the repeat icon to indicate that a track is set to repeat. A small folder icon appears next to it to indicate that a folder is set to repeat.

Supported Devices

The system supports most USB and media players, including iOS and Android devices.

Supported File Formats

The system supports the following file formats:

- MP3, MP4, WMA, WAV, AAC, AIFF, APE, DSD, and FLAC audio file formats.
- MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC file extensions.
- FAT, exFAT, and NTFS file systems.

Audio File Metadata

The system organizes files on your USB or media player by metadata tags. Metadata tags contain information about the file. If the metadata tags for the files on your USB or media player contain no information, the system classifies them as unknown. The system can index up to 50000 tracks on a USB device or media player, and up to 10 devices.

CLIMATE

Touch the climate button on the touchscreen to access your climate control features.

Note: You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See **Settings** (page 431).

Accessing the Climate Control Menu



Touch the button to access additional controls for the front climate system.

Directing the Airflow



Touch the button to direct airflow to the windshield air vents and de-mister.



Touch the button to direct airflow to the instrument panel air vents.



Touch the button to direct airflow to the footwell air vents.

You can direct air through any combination of these air vents.

Setting the Blower Motor Speed



Touch up or down to increase or decrease the volume of air that circulates in your vehicle.

Setting the Temperature

Touch up or down on the left-hand temperature control to set the left-hand temperature.

Note: *This control also adjusts the right-hand side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.*

Touch up or down on the right-hand temperature control to set the right-hand temperature.

Switching Auto Mode On and Off



Touch the button to switch on automatic operation, then set the temperature.

The system adjusts the blower motor speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air to reach and maintain the temperature you have set.

Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off



A pop-up appears on the screen to display the air conditioning options.

MAX A/C: Touch the button to activate and maximize cooling. The driver and passenger temperatures are set to LO, recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

A/C: Touch to switch the air conditioning on or off. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

Note: *In certain conditions, such as maximum defrost, the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the air conditioning.*

Switching the Climate Control On and Off



Touch the button.

Switching the Climate Controlled Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various climate controlled seat settings.

Switching Dual Zone Mode On and Off



Touch the button to switch on temperature control for the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Switching the Heated Exterior Mirrors On and Off



Touch the button.

Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off



Touch the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off



Touch the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog.

Switching the Heated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various heat settings.

Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off



Touch the button.

Switching Maximum Air Conditioning On and Off



Touch the button for maximum cooling.

Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel air vents, air conditioning turns on and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off



Touch the button for maximum defrosting.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

Note: The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.

Switching Recirculated Air On and Off



Touch the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air.

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior, when used with **A/C**, and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

Note: Recirculated air may turn off, or prevent you from switching on, in all air flow modes except **MAX A/C** to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off in various air distribution control combinations during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.

Switching the Ventilated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various ventilated seat settings.

Accessing Rear Climate Controls



Touch the button to access additional controls for the rear climate system.

Rear Climate Control Lock Indicator



Touch the button.

When on, you can only operate the rear passenger settings through the front controls.

Switching Rear Auto Mode On and Off



Touch the button to switch on rear automatic operation, then set the temperature.

Switching the Rear Climate Controlled Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various climate controlled seat settings.

Switching the Rear Heated Seats On and Off




Touch the button to cycle through the various heat settings.

Switching the Rear Ventilated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various ventilated seat settings.

PHONE



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.

Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

Go to the settings menu on your cell phone and switch Bluetooth on. Make sure your cell phone is discoverable. See your cell phone's user manual.



Select the phone option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Pair phone**.

Note: A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your cell phone.

2. Select your vehicle on your cell phone.

Note: A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.

3. Confirm that the number on your cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.

4. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

Note: If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting at any time.

Using Your Cell Phone

Recent Call list

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

Contacts

Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the List button to alphabetically sort your contacts.

Your phone

Change ring tones, alerts or pair another cell phone.

Change device

Display the list of paired or connected devices that you can select.

Do not disturb

Reject incoming calls and switch ring tones and alerts off.

Phone Keypad

Directly dial a number.

Text messages

Display the cell phone messages.

Siri

Connect to Siri on your iOS device.

Phone Voice Assistant

Connect to the phone voice service on your Android device.

Text Messaging

Setting Text Message Notification

iOS

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select Bluetooth.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on.

Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select Bluetooth.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile.
5. Switch text message notification on.

Using Text Messaging

Menu Item	Description
Hear it	Hear the text message.
View	View the text message.
Call	Call the sender.
Reply	Reply to the text message with a standard text message.

Apple CarPlay

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Apple CarPlay.

Switching Apple CarPlay Off

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Apple CarPlay preferences**.
3. Switch **Apple CarPlay** off.

Android Auto

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: You might need to enable Android Auto from the settings menu.

Note: Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.

Switching Android Auto Off

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Android Auto**.
3. Switch **Android Auto** off.

NAVIGATION

Note: For more information, refer to the local Ford website.



Select the navigation option on the feature bar.

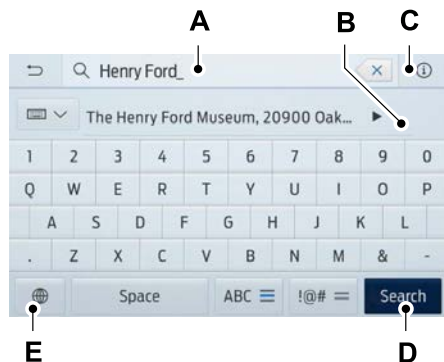


- A Map view menu.
B Zoom out.

- C Zoom in.
- D Route guidance menu.
- E Destination entry menu.

Setting a Destination

Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen



- A Text entry field.
- B Automatic suggestions based on the text you enter.

- C Information icon.
- D Search.
- E Keyboard settings.

Note: Select one of the suggestions to copy the detail to the text entry field.

Note: You can enter a destination in a number of formats, **city street number**, **city number street**, zip code or point of interest.

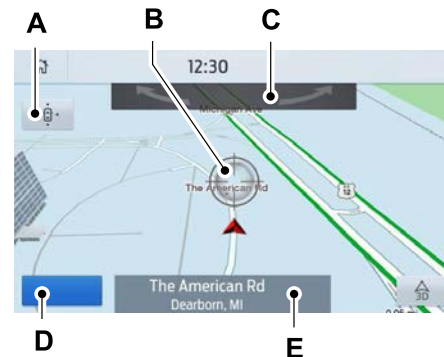
Note: You do not have to enter the destination country.

Note: To enter mutated vowels or accented characters, for example **ä** or **é**, press and hold the corresponding character on the keyboard.

Select **Search**.

Select **Start** to begin route guidance.

Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen



- A Re-center the map.
- B Selected location.
- C 3D map rotation. Swipe left or right.
- D Start route guidance.
- E Destination name.

Select the location on the map.

Select **Start** to begin route guidance.

Changing the Format of the Map

Display the map in one of the following formats:

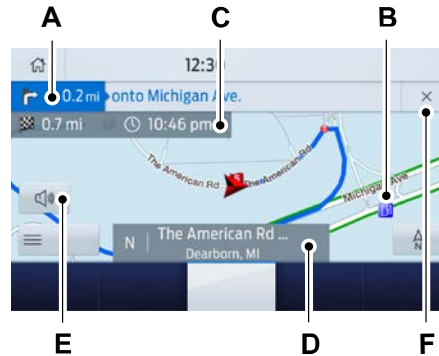
- A two-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the top of the screen.
- A two-dimensional map with north toward the top of the screen.
- A three-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the front.

Zoom

Display more or less detail on the map.

Note: You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the screen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the screen and bring them together to zoom out.

Route Guidance



- A Turn indicator. Select to hear the last guidance prompt.
- B Point of interest.

- C Estimated time of arrival, distance to destination or time to destination.
- D Current road.
- E Mute guidance prompts.
- F Cancel route guidance.

Note: To change guidance prompt volume, turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays.

Route Guidance Menu

Menu Item	Description
Screen view	Adjust your map preferences for when route guidance is active.
Full map	View a full screen map when route guidance is active.
Motorway exit info	View exit information for your current route.
Turn list	View the turn list for your current route. Select a road to avoid it.
Traffic list	View traffic nearby or on your current route. ¹
Navigation settings	Adjust navigation settings.
Where am I?	View information about your current location.
Cancel route	Cancel route guidance.
Show route	View the entire current route on the map.
Re-route	View an alternative route compared to your current one.
Edit waypoints	Change the order or remove waypoints.
Optimise order	The system determines the order of waypoints for you.
Start	Go to the next screen and start the new route.
Search	Enter a destination address.
Home	Set your saved home address as your destination
Work	Set your saved place of work as your destination.

Menu Item	Description
Favourites	Display and select from a list of favorite destinations.
Previous destinations	Display and select from a list of previous destinations.
POI	Display the point of interest categories.

¹Reliant upon traffic message channel or live traffic.

Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

Note: *If you have inadvertently adjusted the volume to zero, press the turn indicator button to play the last voice prompt and then adjust the volume to the desired level.*

Muting Guidance Prompts



Select the mute option on the screen to mute guidance prompts.

Note: *The system mutes the next and all future guidance prompts.*

Adding Waypoints

You can add a waypoint to a navigation route as a destination along your route. You can add up to five waypoints.

1. Select the search option on the map.

2. Set a destination.
3. Select the flag icon.
4. Select **Start**.

Canceling Route Guidance

Canceling Route Guidance From the Route Guidance Menu



Select the route guidance menu option on the active guidance screen.

Select **Cancel route**.

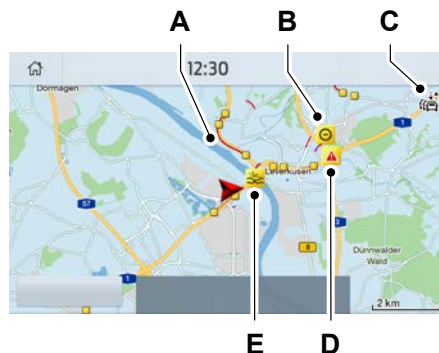
Canceling Route Guidance From the Main Map



Select the icon in the upper right-hand corner of the main map to cancel route guidance.

Live Traffic (If Equipped)

Live traffic provides near real-time traffic information to help you plan the fastest route to your destination. You must have an active subscription for Live Traffic.



- A Traffic congestion.
- B Road closure.
- C Live traffic active.
- D Urgent warning.
- E Traffic incident.

Switching Live Traffic On

Note: Make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 387).

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.

3. Select **Connectivity settings**.
4. Switch **Vehicle connectivity** on.
5. Switch **Location** on.
6. Switch **Vehicle data & Remote ctrl** on.
7. Switch **Live Traffic** on.

Navigation Map Updates

Please check the local Ford website or contact your dealership for navigation map updates.

HERE is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you can report them directly to HERE by visiting www.here.com. HERE evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

APPS

Note: For more information about available apps, supported devices and troubleshooting, refer to our local website.

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. See **Settings** (page 431).

Note: We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges.

Note: We recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app.

Note: Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system.

Note: Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

Using Apps on an iOS Device



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. If your device is connected via USB, switch Apple CarPlay off. See **Phone** (page 423).
2. Connect your device to a USB port or pair and connect using Bluetooth.
3. If prompted to enable CarPlay, select **Disable**.
4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.

Note: If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Note: Connect your device to a USB port if you want to use a navigation app. When using a navigation app, keep your device unlocked and the app open.

Using Apps on an Android Device



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. If your device is connected via USB, switch Android Auto off. See **Phone** (page 423).
2. Switch on **Enable Mobile apps via USB** in the Mobile Apps Settings tile.
3. Pair your device. See **Phone** (page 423).
4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.

Note: If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

5. Select **Find mobile apps**.

Note: The system searches and connects to compatible apps that are running on your device.

6. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Note: Mobile Apps on your device use the USB port to establish a connection with SYNC. Some devices may lose the ability to play music over USB when Mobile Apps are enabled.

Using Mobile Navigation on an Android Device

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Switch Android Auto off. See **Phone** (page 423).
3. Switch on **Enable Mobile apps via USB** in the Mobile Apps Settings tile.
4. Select the apps option on the feature bar.
5. Select the navigation app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Note: When using a navigation app, keep your device unlocked and the app open.

Note: Mobile Apps on your device use the USB port to establish a connection with SYNC. Some devices may lose the ability to play music over USB when Mobile Apps are enabled.

SETTINGS



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

Select a tile to access the settings.



Select the option to display extra information.

Ambient Lighting

You can adjust the ambient lighting settings.

Android Auto

You can switch Android Auto on and off.

Apple CarPlay

You can switch Apple CarPlay on and off.

Audio

You can adjust the audio settings.

Automatic Updates

You can switch automatic updates on and off and adjust the settings.

Bluetooth

You can switch Bluetooth on and off and pair your cell phone.

Clock

You can adjust the clock settings.

Display

You can adjust display settings like brightness and auto dim.

Emergency Assistance

You can switch Emergency Assistance on and off.

FordPass

You can adjust the FordPass settings.

General

You can adjust settings like language, measurement units, or reset the system.

Mobile Apps

You can adjust permissions, enable, disable, and update mobile apps.

Navigation (If Equipped)

You can adjust navigation settings like map preferences and route guidance.

Phone

You can connect and disconnect your device, or manage the connected device settings.

Seats (If Equipped)

You can adjust the position and the massage function of the seats.

Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

Valet Mode (If Equipped)

You can enable and disable the valet mode.

Vehicle (If Equipped)

You can adjust the camera settings.

Voice Control

You can adjust the voice control settings.

Wi-Fi

You can switch Wi-Fi on and off and adjust the settings.

SYNC™ 3 TROUBLESHOOTING

Voice Recognition

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system does not understand what I am saying.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – You are using the wrong voice commands. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See Using Voice Recognition (page 410). • For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website. – You are speaking too soon. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wait for the voice prompt before you speak.
The system does not understand the name of a track or artist.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Device limitation. Bluetooth does not support voice commands. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Connect your device to a USB port. • If you have an iOS device, press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri to play specific tracks. – You are using the wrong voice commands. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See Using Voice Recognition (page 410). • For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website. – You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Say the name of the track or artist exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name. The song or artist name may have some special characters that are not being recognized by the system. – The name contains special characters, for example *, - or +. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rename the files on your device or use the touchscreen to select and play the track.

SYNC™ 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system does not understand the name of a contact in the phonebook on my device and calls the wrong contact.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.– The name contains special characters, for example * - or +.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Rename the contact on your device or use the touchscreen to select and call the contact.
The system does not understand foreign names of contacts in the phonebook on my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. The system applies phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names of contacts in the phonebook on your device. Select the name of the contact on the touchscreen and use the Hear it option to get an idea of how the system expects you to pronounce it.
The system voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words does not seem to be very accurate.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– Device limitation.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The system uses text-to-speech technology and uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.

USB and Bluetooth Audio

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Device malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disconnect your device. Switch your device off, reset it and try again. – Cable connection issue. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Correctly connect the cable to your device and the vehicle USB port. – Incompatible cable. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use the cable recommended by the manufacturer of your device. – Incorrect device settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure that your device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings. • Check that your device is not set only to charge. – Device lock screen enabled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unlock your device before connecting it.
The system does not recognize my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Device limitation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do not leave your device in your vehicle during very hot or very cold weather conditions.
The system does not understand the name of a track or artist.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Device limitation. Bluetooth does not support voice commands. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Connect your device to a USB port. • If you have an iOS device, press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri to play specific tracks.

SYNC™ 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot stream audio from my Bluetooth device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Incompatible device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website. – Device not connected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pair your device. See Phone (page 423). – Media player not running. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Start the media player on your device.
The system does not recognize the music on my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Missing or incorrect audio file metadata, for example artist, song title, album or genre. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Repair the files on your device. – Corrupt files. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Repair the files on your device. – Copyright protected files. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use a device that contains files that are not copyright protected. – Unsupported file format. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Repair or convert the files to a supported format. See Entertainment (page 418). – Device indexing required. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Re-index your device. See Settings (page 431). – Device lock screen enabled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unlock your device before connecting it.

SYNC™ 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
Sometimes I cannot hear a track playing on my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– Device malfunction.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Disconnect your device. Switch your device off, reset it and try again.
When I disconnect my iOS device the audio volume is set to maximum.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– Device limitation.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Turn the volume down on your device
The system does not play the tracks on my USB drive in the correct order.	<p>If the system does not play the tracks on your USB device in the correct order, the following information could help:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">– If you are selecting USB as the audio source when the system is still indexing, SYNC plays tracks sorted alphabetically by file name in the root directory.– If you are selecting USB as the audio source after the system has finished indexing, SYNC plays all tracks sorted alphabetically by the title in the ID3 tag regardless of where they are located. SYNC uses the file name if the title in the ID3 Tag does not exist.– If you are selecting the option to play all tracks from the browsing menu, SYNC plays all tracks sorted alphabetically by the title in the ID3 tag regardless of where they are located. SYNC uses the file name if the title in the ID3 Tag does not exist.– If you are selecting a track when using the explore device option, SYNC plays tracks sorted alphabetically by file name in the folder you have selected. SYNC then plays all tracks in any subfolders in the folder you have selected.

Phone

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
During a call, I can hear excessive background noise.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Incorrect cell phone settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check and adjust the audio settings on your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Cell phone malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again. – Cell phone microphone muted. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unmute your cell phone microphone.
During a call, I cannot hear the other person and they cannot hear me.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – System restart required. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Restart the system. Switch the ignition off and open the door. Close the door and lock the vehicle. Wait until the touchscreen is off and any illuminated USB ports are not illuminated. Unlock the vehicle, switch the ignition on and try again.
I cannot download phonebook.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Incompatible cell phone. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website. – Incorrect cell phone settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Allow the system to retrieve contacts from your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual. – Incorrect system settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switch automatic phonebook download on. See Settings (page 431). – Cell phone malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.

SYNC™ 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
A message displays suggesting that my phonebook has downloaded but it is empty or it has missing contacts.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Incorrect cell phone settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Allow the system to retrieve contacts from your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual. • Check the location of the missing contacts on your cell phone. If they are stored on the SIM card, move them to the cell phone memory. – Incorrect system settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switch automatic phonebook download on. See Settings (page 431).
I cannot connect my cell phone.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Incompatible cell phone. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website. – Cell phone malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again. • Install the latest cell phone firmware. • Delete your device from system and delete SYNC from your device and try again. • Switch automatic phonebook download off. See Settings (page 431).
Text messaging does not work.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Incompatible cell phone. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website. – Cell phone malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.
I cannot hear text messages.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Incompatible cell phone. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website.

SYNC™ 3

Navigation (If Equipped)

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot enter a street name when I am abroad.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– Incorrect entry method.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Enter the street name with the country.
The system does not recognize coordinates.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– You are using the wrong coordinates format.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Use the format ##. #####, ##. ##### (for N/S, E/W). Add a minus before coordinates if the direction is West and keep a positive value if the direction is East, for example 12.5412 means East and -12.5412 means West.

SYNC™ 3

Apps

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– Incompatible device.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• You need an Android device with OS 4.3 or higher or an iOS device with iOS 8.0 or higher. Pair and connect your Android device to find AppLink compatible apps. Connect your Android or iOS device to a USB port or pair and connect using Bluetooth.
I have a compatible device and it is correctly connected but the system still cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– AppLink compatible apps not installed on your device.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Download and install the latest version of the app.– AppLink compatible apps not running on your device.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Start the apps to allow the system to find them and make sure you sign in to any apps if required.– Incorrect app settings.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Check and adjust the app settings on your device and allow SYNC to access the app if required.
I have a compatible device, it is correctly connected and my apps are running but the system still cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– Apps failed to fully close.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Restart the apps and try again.• If you have an Android device with apps that have an exit or quit option, use this and then restart the apps. Alternatively, use the force stop option in the settings menu on your device.• If you have an iOS device with iOS 7.0 or higher, tap the home button on your device twice and then swipe the app upward to close it.

SYNC™ 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I have an Android device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– An issue on some older versions of the Android operating system could result in apps not being found.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Switch Bluetooth off and on again to force the system to reconnect to your device.
I have an iOS device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– Cable connection issue.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Disconnect the cable from your device, wait for a moment and then connect it again to force the system to reconnect to your device.
I have an Android device running a media app which the system has found but I cannot hear the sound or the sound is very quiet.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– Device volume is low.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Turn the volume up on your device.
I have an Android device running a number of compatible apps but the system cannot find all of them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">– Device limitation. Some Android devices have a limited number of Bluetooth ports that apps can use to connect. If you have more apps running on your device than the number of available Bluetooth ports, the system cannot find all of them.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Close some of the apps to allow the system to find those that you want to use.

Wi-Fi Connectivity

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect to a Wi-Fi network.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Password error. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enter the correct network password. – Weak network signal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed. – Multiple access points in range with the same SSID. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use a unique name for your SSID. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.
The Wi-Fi connection disconnects after successful connection.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Weak network signal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
I am close to a Wi-Fi hotspot but the network signal strength is weak.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Obstructed network signal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi hotspot. • If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi hotspot or open the windows that are facing the hotspot. • If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the hotspot. • If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door.

SYNC™ 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot see a network in the list of available networks that I expect to see.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Hidden network. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make the network visible and try again.
Software downloads take too long.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Weak network signal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed. – Wi-Fi hotspot in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use a more reliable Wi-Fi hotspot.
The system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent but the software does not update.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – No software update available. – Wi-Fi network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Test the connection using another device. If the network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions, contact the network service provider.

Resetting the System

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek up and the audio unit power buttons until the screen goes black.
2. Wait three minutes to allow the system to complete the reset.
3. Press the audio unit power button to switch the system on.

Note: You can reset the system to restore functionality that has stopped working. The system reset is designed to restore functionality and not delete any data that you have stored.

Additional Information and Assistance

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer or refer to the local Ford website.

Appendices

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



WARNING: Do not fasten antenna cables to vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.



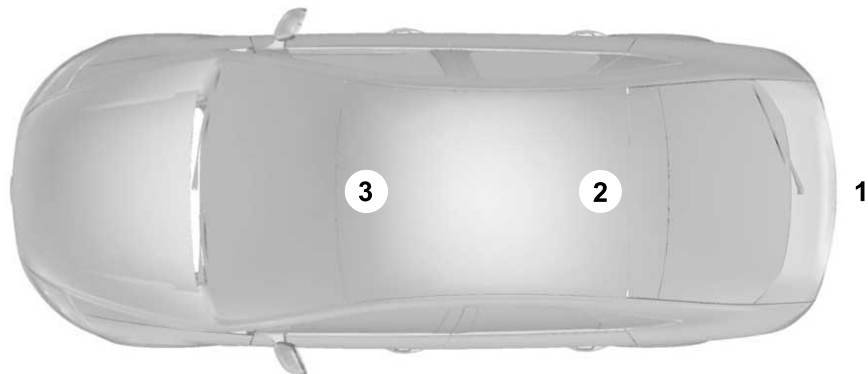
WARNING: Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm (4 in) from any electronic modules and airbags.

Note: We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start, Bluetooth connectivity or satellite navigation.

Note: Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

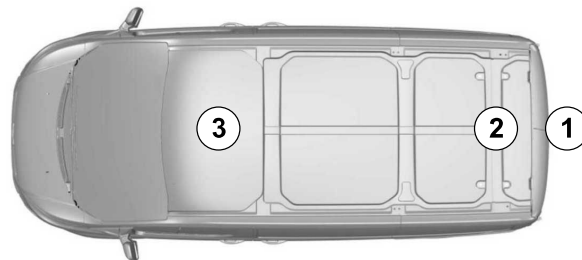
Appendices

Car



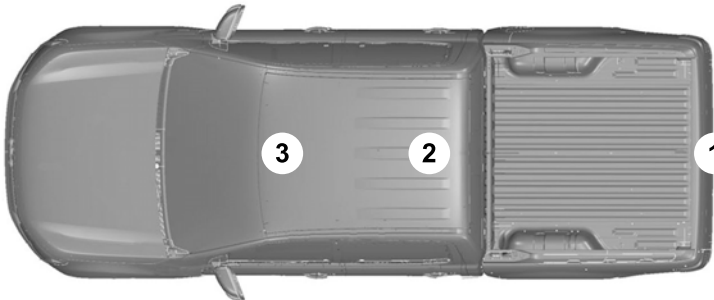
Appendices

Van



Appendices

Truck



Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-88	50	2, 3
142-176	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

Appendices

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its

suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.

- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly

Appendices

permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.

- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components"). SOFTWARE updates may cause you to

incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

Appendices

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA: If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS: All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants

you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

Appendices

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.

Appendices

- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.
- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Appendices

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of
Risk

Appendices

- You agree to each of the following: (a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service. (d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges

from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.

- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT

NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN ARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE

Appendices

DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER. SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal

jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD

MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

Appendices

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the “AAA”), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or

call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY’S principal place of business. The arbitrator may award the same damages to You individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to You individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy Your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- I. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA’s and arbitrator’s fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY’S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed (“last written offer”), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator’s decision (called an “award”), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney’s fees, if any; and (3)

reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.

- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA’s and arbitrator’s fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator’s fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all filing, AAA, and arbitrator’s fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney’s fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

Appendices

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(i) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the

TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

(a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;

(b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;

(c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;

(d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;

(e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

Appendices

3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or

markings; **(d)** distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,

ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or

iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by

the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is

Appendices

dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL,

CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENV AND OF ALL OF TELENV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you

Appendices

agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting

them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

Appendices

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors::

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions

Permitted Use. You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Appendices

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to,

content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING

OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Appendices

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert “Netherlands” where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert “The Netherlands” where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a “commercial item” as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. (“FAR”) 2.101, is

licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following “Notice of Use,” and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606
This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End- User Terms under which this Data was provided.
© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

“HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.”

“©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.”

Appendices

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors (“Third Party Data”), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada (“NRCan”):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: “This data includes information taken with permission from

Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved.”

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources Canada (“NRCan”). Such data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post

Appendices

and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of

the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía (“INEGI”):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: “Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Argentina	IGN “INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO”
Ecuador	“INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011”

Appendices

Guade-
loupe,
French
Guiana
and
Marti-
nique
Mexico

“source: © IGN 2009 - BD
TOPO ®”

“Fuente: INEGI (Instituto
Nacional de Estadística y
Geografía)”

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
Jordan	“© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre”. The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client's license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE's database for the country of Jordan (“Jordan Data”) for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications”

shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

Appendices

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Équipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from

Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies)	Notice
Austria	"© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"
Croatia	
Cyprus,	
Estonia,	
Latvia,	
Lithuania,	
Moldova,	
Poland,	
Slovenia	
and/or	
Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"
Germany	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"

Appendices

Great Britain “Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010”

Greece “Copyright Geomatics Ltd.”

Hungary “Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd.”

Italy “La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana.”

Norway “Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority”

Portugal “Source: IgeoE – Portugal”

Spain “Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG”

Sweden “Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden.”

Switzerland “Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.pasma.com.au).

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: “Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors.”

Appendices

AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION "UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER" INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED

HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER'S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTEE THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER'S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY. END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE

Appendices

UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE, TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not

remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

rigCustomer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

Appendices

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING

OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

Appendices

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDb are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain

content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR

Appendices

CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

Radio Frequency Statement

FCC ID: ACJ-SYNCG3-L

IC: 216B-SYNCG3-L

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1)** This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2)** this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Taiwan Territory

Note: In accordance with the management approach of low-power radio wave radiation motors:

Article 12: For approved and certified low-power radiation motor models, companies, firms or users must not alter the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

Article 14: The usage of low-power radio-frequency motors must not affect aviation safety and interfere with legal telecommunications. Should interference be detected, immediately stop using the device and only resume usage after ensuring that there is no longer any interference. For the legal telecommunication and wireless telecommunication of the telco, the low-power radio frequency motor must be able to tolerate legal limits of interference from telecommunication, industrial, scientific and radio wave equipment.

Appendices

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intellematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intellematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorised drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavours to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Appendices

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the “**Suppliers**”)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that the neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Your vehicle could have components that transmit and receive radio waves and are therefore subject to government regulation.

These components must accept any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation. For certification labels and declarations of conformity, visit www.wirelessconformity.ford.com.

Index

A	
A/C	
See: Climate Control.....	134
About This Manual.....	9
ABS	
See: Brakes.....	195
ABS driving hints	
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	195
Accessories	
See: Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	12
ACC	
See: Using Adaptive Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	213
See: Using Adaptive Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	224
Acknowledgments.....	9
Active Park Assist.....	206
Using Active Park Assist.....	206
Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors.....	101
Adjusting the Interior Mirror.....	100
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	78
Air Conditioning	
See: Climate Control.....	134
Air Vents.....	134
Center Air Vents.....	134
Side Air Vents.....	134
Alarm	
See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery.....	74
See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Perimeter Alarm.....	75
AM/FM Radio - Vehicles With: SYNC	
2.5.....	396
Using the Radio.....	396
AM/FM Radio - Vehicles Without:	
SYNC.....	396
Selecting a Radio Source.....	396
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery.....	74
Arming the Alarm.....	75
Battery Back-up Sounder.....	74
Disarming the Alarm.....	75
Full and Reduced Guard.....	75
Inclination Sensors.....	74
Interior Sensors.....	74
Perimeter Alarm.....	74
Triggering the Alarm.....	74
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With:	
Perimeter Alarm.....	75
Arming the Alarm.....	75
Disarming the Alarm.....	76
Appendices.....	445
Apps.....	430
Using Apps on an Android Device.....	431
Using Apps on an iOS Device.....	430
Using Mobile Navigation on an Android Device.....	431
Apps - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5.....	402
Apps Troubleshooting.....	404
Using Android Auto.....	403
Using Apple CarPlay.....	402
Using Apps on an Android Device.....	403
Using Apps on an iOS Device.....	402
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	111
Airbag Secondary Warning.....	111
Automatic Transmission.....	112
Auto-Start-Stop Warning.....	112
Door Ajar.....	112
Exterior Lamps On.....	112
Key Outside Vehicle.....	112
Low Fuel Reminder.....	112
Over Speed Warning.....	112
Parking Brake On.....	112
Seatbelt Reminder.....	112
Audio System.....	392
Audio System - Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5.....	406
Master Reset.....	407
Resetting the System.....	406
Updating the System.....	406
Audio Unit Clock and Date Displays - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5.....	398
Audio Unit Clock and Date Displays - Vehicles Without: SYNC.....	398
Adjusting the Clock.....	398
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5.....	395
Adjusting the Volume.....	395
Changing Radio Stations.....	395
Pausing or Playing Media.....	395

Index

Seek Down and Previous Track Button.....	395	Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	100	Overriding Automatic High Beam Control.....	91
Seek Up and Next Track Button.....	395	Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror		Switching Automatic High Beam Control On	
Sound Settings.....	395	Precautions.....	100	or Off.....	91
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off.....	395	What Is the Auto-Dimming Interior		Automatic Transmission Audible	
Switching the Screen On and Off.....	395	Mirror.....	100	Warnings.....	194
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC 3.....	393	Autolamps.....	89	Transmission Not in Park (P) Audible	
Adjusting the Volume.....	394	Adjusting the Period of Time That the		Warning.....	194
Changing Radio Stations.....	394	Headlamps Remain On.....	89	Automatic Transmission.....	191
Pausing or Playing Media.....	394	Automatic Climate Control.....	135	Automatic Transmission Positions.....	191
Seek Down and Previous Track Button.....	394	Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents.....	137	Automatic Transmission –	
Seek Up and Next Track Button.....	394	Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air		Troubleshooting.....	194
Sound Settings.....	394	Vents.....	137	Brake Shift Interlock.....	192
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off.....	393	Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents.....	137	Manually Shifting Gears.....	192
Switching the Screen On and Off.....	394	Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....	137	Automatic Transmission Position	
Audio Unit - Vehicles Without: SYNC.....	392	Setting the Temperature.....	138	Indicators - 7-Speed Automatic	
Adjusting the Volume.....	392	Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....	136	Transmission, Vehicles With: Paddle	
Changing Radio Stations.....	392	Switching Maximum Cooling On and		Shifters.....	192
Pausing or Playing Media.....	393	Off.....	136	Automatic Transmission Position	
Returning to the Previous Screen.....	393	Switching Maximum Defrost On and		Indicators - 7-Speed Automatic	
Scrolling Through the Menu Options.....	392	Off.....	136	Transmission, Vehicles Without: Paddle	
Seek Down and Previous Track Button.....	393	Switching the Air Conditioning On and		Shifters.....	191
Seek Up and Next Track Button.....	393	Off.....	136	Automatic Transmission Positions.....	191
Selecting a Menu Option.....	393	Switching the Climate Control On and		Drive (D).....	191
Selecting Media.....	392	Off.....	135	Low (L).....	191
Selecting the Radio.....	392	Switching the Recirculated Air On and		Manual (M).....	191
Sound Settings.....	393	Off.....	135	Neutral (N).....	191
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off.....	392	Automatic Crash Notification System.....	50	Park (P).....	191
Switching the Screen On and Off.....	393	Automatic High Beam Control.....	90	Reverse (R).....	191
System Settings.....	393	About Automatic High Beam Control.....	90	Automatic Transmission Precautions.....	191
Using a Cell Phone.....	393	Automatic High Beam Control Information		Automatic Transmission Shift Indicators –	
		Messages.....	91	Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters.....	192
		Automatic High Beam Indicator.....	91		

Index

Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	194
Automatic Transmission – Information Messages.....	194
Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning.....	173
Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission, Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	170
Information Messages.....	171
Principle of Operation.....	170
Replacing the Battery.....	171
Switching the System On and Off.....	170
Using Auto-Start-Stop.....	170
Auto-Start-Stop.....	172
Auto-Start-Stop Settings.....	172
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	174
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators.....	173
Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission, Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	168
Auto-Start-Stop Warning.....	169
Information Messages.....	169
Principle of Operation.....	168
Replacing the Battery.....	169
Switching the System On and Off.....	168
Using Auto-Start-Stop.....	168
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions.....	172
Auto-Start-Stop Settings.....	172
Setting the Engine Stop Speed.....	172
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	174
Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked Questions.....	175

Auto-Start-Stop – Information Messages.....	174
Autowipers.....	81
Settings.....	82
Auxiliary Power Points.....	149

B

Battery	
See: Changing the 12V Battery.....	311
Blind Spot Information System.....	244
Blind Spot Information System Indicator.....	245
Blind Spot Information System Information Messages.....	245
Blind Spot Information System Sensors.....	244
Switching the Blind Spot Information System On and Off.....	245
Using the Blind Spot Information System.....	244
BLIS	
See: Blind Spot Information System.....	244
Body Styling Kits.....	327
Bonnet Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	294
Brake Fluid Check.....	310
Brakes.....	195
General Information.....	195
Brake Shift Interlock.....	192
Brake Shift Interlock Precautions.....	193
Using Brake Shift Interlock.....	193

What Is Brake Shift Interlock.....	192
Breaking-In.....	273
Brakes and Clutch.....	273
Engine.....	273
Tires.....	273
Bulb Specification Chart.....	379

C

Capacities and Specifications - 1.0L	
EcoBoost™.....	367
Brake System.....	370
Engine.....	368
Fuel Tank.....	369
Washer Reservoir.....	369
Capacities and Specifications - 1.1L	
Duratec.....	370
Brake System.....	373
Engine.....	371
Fuel Tank.....	372
Washer Reservoir.....	372
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L	
Duratorq-TDCi Diesel.....	373
Brake System.....	376
Engine.....	373
Fuel Tank.....	375
Washer Reservoir.....	375
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L	
EcoBoost™.....	376
Brake System.....	379
Engine.....	377
Fuel Tank.....	378

Index

Washer Reservoir.....	378		
Capacities and Specifications.....	363		
Car Wash			
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	323		
Catalytic Converter.....	183		
On-Board Diagnostics System.....	183		
Center Console - 6-Speed Automatic			
Transmission, LHD, Vehicles With: Active			
Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear			
Parking Aid, Excluding: Liquefied			
Petroleum Gas (LPG)/ST.....	28		
Center Console - 6-Speed Automatic			
Transmission, LHD, Vehicles Without:			
Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear			
Parking Aid, Excluding: Liquefied			
Petroleum Gas (LPG)/ST.....	27		
Center Console - 6-Speed Automatic			
Transmission, RHD, Vehicles With: Active			
Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear			
Parking Aid, Excluding: Liquefied			
Petroleum Gas (LPG)/ST.....	29		
Center Console - 6-Speed Automatic			
Transmission, RHD, Vehicles Without:			
Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear			
Parking Aid, Excluding: Liquefied			
Petroleum Gas (LPG)/ST.....	29		
Center Console - 7-Speed Automatic			
Transmission, LHD, Vehicles With: Active			
Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear			
Parking Aid, Excluding: Liquefied			
Petroleum Gas (LPG)/ST.....	31		
Center Console - 7-Speed Automatic			
Transmission, LHD, Vehicles Without:			
Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear			
Parking Aid, Excluding: Liquefied			
Petroleum Gas (LPG)/ST.....	32		
Center Console - 7-Speed Automatic			
Transmission, RHD, Vehicles Without:			
Active Park Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear			
Parking Aid, Excluding: Liquefied			
Petroleum Gas (LPG)/ST.....	31		
Center Console - Liquefied Petroleum Gas			
(LPG), Vehicles With: Active Park Assist/			
Front Parking Aid/Rear Parking Aid.....	24		
Center Console - Liquefied Petroleum Gas			
(LPG), Vehicles Without: Active Park			
Assist/Front Parking Aid.....	24		
Center Console - Manual Transmission,			
LHD, Vehicles With: Active Park Assist/			
Front Parking Aid/Rear Parking Aid,			
Excluding: Liquefied Petroleum Gas			
(LPG)/ST.....	25		
Center Console - Manual Transmission,			
LHD, Vehicles Without: Active Park			
Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear Parking			
Aid, Excluding: Liquefied Petroleum Gas			
(LPG)/ST.....	25		
Center Console - Manual Transmission,			
RHD, Vehicles With: Active Park Assist/			
Front Parking Aid/Rear Parking Aid,			
Excluding: Liquefied Petroleum Gas			
(LPG)/ST.....	27		
Center Console - Manual Transmission,			
RHD, Vehicles Without: Active Park			
Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear Parking			
Aid, Excluding: Liquefied Petroleum Gas			
(LPG)/ST.....	27		
Center Console - Manual Transmission,			
RHD, Vehicles Without: Active Park			
Assist/Front Parking Aid/Rear Parking			
Aid, Excluding: Liquefied Petroleum Gas			
(LPG)/ST.....	26		
Changing a Bulb.....	316		
Front Fog Lamp.....	319		
Headlamp.....	316		
High Mounted Stoptlamp.....	322		
License Plate Lamp.....	322		
Rear Fog Lamp.....	322		
Rear Lamp.....	321		
Side Direction Indicator.....	320		
Changing a Fuse.....	292		
Engine Compartment Fuse Box.....	292		
Fuses Types.....	293		
General Information.....	292		
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box.....	292		
Changing a Road Wheel - Vehicles With:			
Spare Wheel.....	338		
Installing a Road Wheel.....	345		
Jacking and Lifting Points.....	341		
Removing a Road Wheel.....	344		
Removing the Wheel Trim.....	343		
Vehicle Jack.....	340		
Vehicles With a Spare Wheel.....	338		
Vehicles Without a Spare Wheel.....	340		

Index

Changing the 12V Battery.....	311	Rear Windows.....	325	Switching the Heated Seats On and Off.....	422
Remove and Reinstall the Battery.....	312	Seatbelts.....	324	Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off.....	422
Changing the Front Wiper Blades.....	313	Storage Compartments, Cup Holders and Ashtrays.....	325	Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off.....	422
Changing the Rear Wiper Blades.....	313	Suede Micro Fiber Fabric.....	325	Switching the Rear Climate Controlled Seats On and Off.....	423
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password.....	391	Cleaning the Wheels.....	326	Switching the Rear Heated Seats On and Off.....	423
Charging a Wireless Device.....	150	Clearing All MyKeys.....	63	Switching the Rear Ventilated Seats On and Off.....	423
Checking Current Highway Information Status.....	262	Climate.....	420	Switching the Ventilated Seats On and Off.....	422
Checking MyKey System Status.....	64	Accessing Rear Climate Controls.....	422	Climate Control.....	134
Checking the Clutch Fluid Level.....	189	Accessing the Climate Control Menu.....	420	Clutch Fluid Check.....	311
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	313	Directing the Airflow.....	420	Clutch Fluid Specification.....	189
Child Restraint Positioning.....	37	Rear Climate Control Lock Indicator.....	423	Cold Weather Precautions.....	273
Child Safety.....	33	Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....	421	Compact Disc Player - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5.....	400
Child Safety Locks.....	42	Setting the Temperature.....	421	Playing a CD.....	400
Left-Hand Side.....	42	Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....	421	Using the CD Player.....	400
Right-Hand Side.....	42	Switching Dual Zone Mode On and Off.....	421	Compact Disc Player - Vehicles Without: SYNC.....	399
Cigar Lighter.....	149	Switching Maximum Air Conditioning On and Off.....	422	Playing a CD.....	399
Cleaning Leather Seats.....	326	Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off.....	422	Connected Vehicle.....	387
Cleaning the Exterior.....	323	Switching Rear Auto Mode On and Off.....	423	Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	387
BodyPaintwork Preservation.....	324	Switching Recirculated Air On and Off.....	422	Connected Vehicle Data - Vehicles With: Modem.....	16
Cleaning Stripes or Graphics.....	323	Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off.....	421	Connected Vehicle Limitations.....	387
Cleaning the Chrome Trim.....	323	Switching the Climate Controlled Seats On and Off.....	421	Connected Vehicle Requirements.....	387
Cleaning the Headlamps.....	323	Switching the Climate Control On and Off.....	421		
Cleaning the Rear Window.....	323	Switching the Heated Exterior Mirrors On and Off.....	421		
Cleaning the Interior.....	324	Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off.....	422		
Fabric, Carpets, Cloth Seats, Headliners and Floor Mats.....	324				
Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens.....	325				
Leather Interior.....	325				
Mirrors.....	325				

Index

Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: Modem.....	388
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: SYNC 3/SYNC 2.5.....	389
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5.....	399
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device - Vehicles Without: SYNC.....	399
Pairing a Device.....	399
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	387
Connecting FordPass to the Modem.....	387
Enabling and Disabling the Modem.....	387
What Is the Modem.....	387
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	387
Coolant Check	
See: Engine Coolant Check.....	309
Cornering Lamps.....	93
Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	61
MyKey Information Messages.....	61
Creating a MyKey - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start.....	60
MyKey Information Messages.....	60
Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	391
Connecting a Device to the Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	391
Finding the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name and Password.....	391
Cross Traffic Alert.....	246
Blocked Sensors.....	249

Switching the System Off and On.....	249
System Errors.....	249
System Lights, Messages and Audible Alerts.....	249
System Limitations.....	249
Using the Cross Traffic Alert System.....	246
Cruise Control.....	212
Principle of Operation.....	212
Cruise control	
See: Using Cruise Control.....	212
Cup Holders.....	152
Current Highway Information.....	262

D

Data Privacy.....	14
Services That Third Parties Provide.....	14
Services That We Provide.....	14
Declaration of Conformity.....	476
Device Holder.....	152
Installing a Device.....	152
Installing the Device Holder.....	152
Removing a Device.....	152
Removing the Device Holder.....	152
Diesel Particulate Filter.....	185
Diesel Particulate Filter Automatic Regeneration.....	186
On-Board Diagnostics System.....	186
Digital Radio - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5.....	398
Using the Radio.....	398

Digital Radio - Vehicles Without: SYNC.....	397
Selecting a Radio Source.....	397
Direction Indicators.....	94
Displaying the Efficient Drive Mode.....	261
Door Edge Protection.....	77
Principle of Operation.....	77
Doors and Locks.....	67
Drive Control.....	260
Selectable Drive Modes.....	260
Driver Airbag.....	46
Driver Alert.....	238
Resetting the System.....	240
System Display.....	239
System Warnings.....	239
Driving Aids.....	235
Driving Hints.....	273
Driving Through Water.....	273

E

Eco.....	254
Eco Mode.....	254
Economical Driving.....	273
Efficient Drive Mode.....	261
Trip Summary.....	261
Efficient Drive Mode Indicators.....	261
Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	445
Emergency Assistance.....	50
Emergency Call System Data.....	17
Enabling Current Highway Information.....	262

Index

End User License Agreement.....	449
VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)	449
Engine Block Heater.....	166
Using the Engine Block Heater.....	167
Engine Coolant Check.....	309
Adding Coolant.....	310
Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel.....	309
Engine Cooling Fan - Gasoline.....	309
Engine Emission Control.....	183
Engine Immobilizer	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	74
Engine Oil Check.....	307
Adding Engine Oil.....	308
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L EcoBoost™/1.1L Duratec.....	307
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel.....	307
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	307
Engine Overspeed.....	274
Entertainment.....	418
Playing Music From a USB or Media Player.....	420
Streaming Music From a Bluetooth Device.....	419
Using the Radio.....	418
Environment.....	18
Event Data.....	15
Exterior Mirrors.....	101

F

Fan	
See: Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel.....	309
See: Engine Cooling Fan - Gasoline.....	309
Fastening the Seatbelts.....	43
Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy.....	43
First Aid Kit.....	276
Flat Tire	
See: Changing a Road Wheel - Vehicles With: Spare Wheel.....	338
Flat Tire Inflation	
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit - Vehicles With: Temporary Mobility Kit.....	328
Floor Mats.....	274
Fog Lamps - Front	
See: Front Fog Lamps.....	92
Fog Lamps - Rear	
See: Rear Fog Lamps.....	92
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Manual Fold Exterior Mirrors.....	101
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Power Fold Exterior Mirrors.....	101
Switching Auto-fold On and Off.....	101
Front Fog Lamps.....	92
Front Fog Lamp Indicator.....	92
Switching the Front Fog Lamps On or Off.....	92
Front Parking Aid.....	202
Front Parking Aid Information Messages.....	204
Object Distance Indicator.....	203

Front Wiper Blades	
See: Changing the Front Wiper Blades.....	313
Fuel and Refueling.....	176
Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....	382
Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.1L Duratec.....	383
Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel.....	384
Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	385
Fuel Consumption Figures.....	386
European Directive 1999/94/EC.....	386
Fuel Economy and CO2 Emissions.....	386
Fuel Consumption.....	181
Advertised Capacity.....	181
Fuel Economy.....	182
Fuel Filler Funnel Location.....	177
Fuel Quality - Diesel.....	177
Long-Term Storage.....	177
Fuel Quality - Gasoline.....	176
Long-Term Storage.....	177
Fuel Shutoff.....	276
Fuse Box Locations.....	280
Engine Compartment Fuse Box.....	280
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box.....	280
Fuses.....	280
Fuse Specification Chart.....	281
Engine Compartment Fuse Box.....	281
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box.....	289

Index

G

Gasoline Particulate Filter.....	184
Gasoline Particulate Filter Information	
Messages.....	185
Gasoline Particulate Filter	
Regeneration.....	184
Gasoline Particulate Filter Warning Lamps	
and Indicators.....	184
Gauges - Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric	
Vehicle (MHEV).....	103
Automatic Transmission Gearshift Lever	
Position Indicator.....	104
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	104
Fuel Gauge.....	104
Information Display.....	104
Odometer.....	104
Speedometer.....	104
Tachometer.....	104
Trip Computer.....	104
Vehicle and System Settings.....	104
Gauges - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle	
(MHEV).....	105
Automatic Transmission Gearshift Lever	
Position Indicator.....	107
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	107
Fuel Gauge.....	106
Hybrid Gauge.....	107
Information Display.....	106
Instrument Cluster.....	105
Speedometer.....	106
Tachometer.....	106

General Information on Radio	
Frequencies.....	53
Global Opening and Closing.....	97
Switching Global Closing On and Off.....	98
Switching Global Opening On and Off.....	97
Using Global Closing.....	98
Using Global Opening.....	97
What Is Global Opening and Closing.....	97

H

Handbrake	
See: Parking Brake - Automatic	
Transmission.....	196
See: Parking Brake - Manual Transmission....	195
Hazard Flashers.....	276
Hazard Flasher Indicator.....	276
Switching the Hazard Flashers On or	
Off.....	276
Headlamp Exit Delay.....	89
Headlamp Leveling.....	92
Headlamp Removal	
See: Removing a Headlamp.....	314
Headrest	
See: Head Restraints.....	142
Head Restraints.....	142
Adjusting the Head Restraints.....	143
Removing the Head Restraints.....	143
Heated Exterior Mirrors.....	140
Heated Rear Window - Vehicles With:	
Automatic Temperature Control.....	140

Heated Rear Window - Vehicles With:	
Manual Temperature Control.....	140
Heated Seats.....	148
Heated Steering Wheel.....	79
Heated Windshield.....	139
Heating	
See: Climate Control.....	134
Hill Start Assist.....	196
Switching the System On and Off.....	197
Using Hill Start Assist.....	197
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate -	
Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature	
Control.....	138
Defogging or Clearing the Windshield of Thin	
Ice.....	139
Defogging the Side Windows in Cold	
Weather.....	139
General Hints.....	138
Quickly Cooling the Interior.....	138
Recommended Settings for Cooling.....	139
Recommended Settings for Heating.....	138
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate -	
Vehicles With: Manual Temperature	
Control.....	139
Defogging or Clearing the Windshield of Thin	
Ice.....	139
Defogging the Side Windows in Cold	
Weather.....	139
General Hints.....	139
Quickly Cooling the Interior.....	139
Quickly Heating the Interior.....	139
Recommended Settings for Cooling.....	139

Index

Recommended Settings for Heating.....	139
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	195
Hood Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	294
Hybrid Vehicle Operation.....	171
I	
Ignition Switch.....	153
Starting the Engine.....	154
Switching the Ignition Off.....	154
Switching the Ignition On.....	154
Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode.....	154
Information Displays.....	113
General Information.....	113
Information Messages.....	118
Active Park Assist.....	118
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	119
Alarm.....	119
Automatic High Beam Control.....	120
Auto-Start-Stop.....	120
Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert Systems.....	121
Brake System.....	122
Doors and Locks.....	123
Driver Alert.....	123
Engine.....	124
Fuel System.....	124
Headlamps.....	125
Hill Start Assist.....	125

Lane Keeping System.....	125
Maintenance.....	126
MyKey.....	127
Parking Aid.....	128
Parking Brake.....	128
Pre-Collision Assist.....	129
Rear Window Lock.....	129
Remote Control.....	129
Seatbelt Reminder.....	129
Selectable Drive Modes.....	130
Stability Control.....	130
Starting System.....	130
Steering System.....	131
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	132
Transmission.....	132
Installing Child Restraints.....	33
Attaching a Child Restraint With a Support Leg.....	36
Attaching a Child Restraint With Top Tethers.....	36
Booster Seats.....	34
Child Restraints for Different Mass Groups.....	34
ISOFIX Anchor Points.....	35
Top Tether Anchor Points.....	36
Instrument Cluster.....	103
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	89
Instrument Panel - LHD.....	20
Instrument Panel - RHD.....	22
Intelligent Speed Limiter.....	235
Adjusting Intelligent Speed Limiter Tolerance Settings.....	237

Principle of Operation.....	235
Switching to Normal Speed Limiter.....	238
Using Intelligent Speed Limiter.....	236
Interior Lamps - Vehicles With: Front Interior Lamp.....	94
Interior Lamp Function.....	95
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off.....	94
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off.....	94
Interior Lamps - Vehicles With: Front Interior Lamp With Map Reading Lamps.....	95
Interior Lamp Function.....	96
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off.....	95
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off.....	95
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off.....	95
Interior Mirror.....	100
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	100
Introduction.....	9

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	277
To Connect the Booster Cables.....	278
To Start the Engine.....	278

Index

K

Keyless Entry.....	70
Deactivated Passive Keys.....	71
Locking the Doors.....	70
Locking the Liftgate.....	71
Principle of Operation.....	70
Smart Unlocks for Passive Keys.....	71
Switching Keyless Entry On or Off.....	72
Unlocking the Doors.....	71
Unlocking the Driver Door.....	71
Unlocking the Liftgate.....	71
Keys and Remote Controls.....	53

L

Lane Keeping System.....	240
Lane Keeping System Display.....	242
Lane Keeping System Indicators.....	242
Lane Keeping System Messages.....	243
Lane Keeping System Settings.....	241
Lane Keeping System Warning Lamp.....	243
Switching Lane Keeping System On and Off.....	241
Liftgate.....	73
Lighting Control.....	86
Exterior Lamps On Audible Warning.....	88
Flashing High Beam Headlamps.....	88
Headlamps Information Messages.....	88
High Beam Headlamp Indicator.....	88
Lamps On Indicator.....	88
Lighting Control Positions.....	86

Low Beam Headlamp Warning Lamp.....	88
Switching All of the Parking Lamps On.....	87
Switching High Beam Headlamps On and Off.....	87
Switching the Left-Hand Side or the Right-Hand Side Parking Lamps On.....	87
Lighting.....	86
General Information.....	86
Load Carriers	
See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers - Vehicles With: Panoramic Roof Opening Panel.....	264
See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers - Vehicles Without: Panoramic Roof Opening Panel.....	264
Load Carrying.....	263
General Information.....	263
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	150
Locking and Unlocking.....	67
Door Lock Indicator.....	67
Door Lock Switch Inhibitor.....	67
Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside.....	68
Locking and Unlocking the Doors Individually with the Key Blade.....	69
Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade.....	68
Power Door Locks.....	67
Remote Control.....	67
Locking the Rear Window Controls.....	99

Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	78
Unlocking the Steering Wheel.....	79
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start.....	78
Unlocking the Steering Wheel.....	78
Luggage Covers.....	264
Removing the Cover.....	264
Lug Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel - Vehicles With: Spare Wheel.....	338
Lug Nuts.....	362
Locking Lug Nuts.....	362
Lug Nut Torque.....	362

M

Maintenance.....	294
General Information.....	294
Manual Climate Control.....	134
Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents.....	135
Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents.....	135
Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents.....	135
Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....	135
Setting the Temperature.....	135
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off.....	135
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off.....	134
Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off.....	134

Index

Switching the Climate Control On and Off.....	134
Switching the Recirculated Air On and Off.....	134
Manual Liftgate.....	73
Closing the Liftgate.....	73
Opening the Liftgate Using the Exterior Release Button.....	73
Opening the Liftgate Using the Remote Control.....	73
Manually Shifting Gears.....	192
Shifting Using the Paddle Shifters.....	192
Manual Seats - 3-Door.....	143
Adjusting the Height of the Driver Seat.....	145
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	145
Folding the Seat Backrest Forward.....	144
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	144
Recline Adjustment.....	146
Returning the Seat Backrest to the Seating Position.....	145
Manual Seats - 5-Door.....	146
Adjusting the Height of the Driver Seat.....	147
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	146
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	146
Recline Adjustment.....	147
Manual Transmission.....	189
Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	190
Manual Transmission Precautions.....	189

Manual Transmission Shift Indicators.....	189
Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	190
Manual Transmission – Frequently Asked Questions.....	190
Message Center See: Information Displays.....	113
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	12
Mobile Device Data - Vehicles With: SYNC 3.....	16
Moonroof Bounce-Back.....	102
Moonroof.....	102
MyKey Settings – Excluding: ST.....	59
Configurable Settings.....	59
Non-Configurable Settings.....	59
MyKey – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	65
What is an admin key?.....	65
Why can I not clear the MyKeys?.....	65
Why can I not create a MyKey?.....	65
Why can I not program a MyKey?.....	65
Why can I not start the engine with a MyKey?.....	66
Why does the MyKey distance not accumulate?.....	65
MyKey – Troubleshooting - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start.....	65
What is an admin key?.....	65
Why can I not clear the MyKeys?.....	65
Why can I not create a MyKey?.....	65
Why can I not program a MyKey?.....	65

Why does the MyKey distance not accumulate?.....	65
MyKey™.....	59
Principle of Operation.....	59

N

Navigation.....	425
Changing the Format of the Map.....	427
Live Traffic.....	429
Navigation Map Updates.....	430
Route Guidance.....	427
Setting a Destination.....	426
Zoom.....	427

O

Oil Change Indicator Reset.....	308
Oil Check See: Engine Oil Check.....	307
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	294
Closing the Hood.....	295
Opening the Hood.....	294
Opening and Closing the Moonroof.....	102
Closing the Moonroof.....	102
Opening the Moonroof.....	102
Opening and Closing the Sun Shade.....	102
Opening and Closing the Windows.....	97
One-Touch Close.....	97
One-Touch Open.....	97

Index

P

Parking Aids.....	200
Principle of Operation.....	200
Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission.....	196
Parking Brake - Manual Transmission.....	195
Passenger Airbag.....	47
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	74
Arming the Engine Immobilizer.....	74
Coded Keys.....	74
Disarming the Engine Immobilizer.....	74
Principle of Operation.....	74
Passive Key Backup Position.....	58
PATS	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	74
Personalized Settings.....	116
Chimes.....	118
Language.....	116
Measure Unit.....	117
Temperature Unit.....	117
Tire Pressure Unit.....	117
Phone.....	423
Android Auto.....	425
Apple CarPlay.....	425
Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time.....	423
Text Messaging.....	424
Using Your Cell Phone.....	424

Playing Media From a USB Device - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5.....	401
Selecting the USB Device.....	401
Supported File Formats.....	401
Playing Media From a USB Device - Vehicles Without: SYNC.....	401
Selecting the USB Device.....	401
Supported Audio File Formats.....	401
Power Door Locks	
See: Locking and Unlocking.....	67
Pre-Collision Assist.....	254
Distance Alert.....	256
Distance Indication.....	257
Pre-Collision Assist Information Messages.....	259
Pre-Collision Assist System Sensors.....	258
Pre-Collision Assist Warning Lamp.....	258
Programming a MyKey.....	62
Protecting the Environment.....	18
Puncture	
See: Changing a Road Wheel - Vehicles With: Spare Wheel.....	338
Push Button Ignition Switch.....	154
Failure to Start - Vehicles with Manual Transmission.....	155
Fast Restart.....	156
Key Outside Vehicle Audible Warning.....	157
Starting System Information Messages.....	156
Starting The Engine - Vehicles with Automatic Transmission.....	154
Starting The Engine - Vehicles with Manual Transmission.....	154

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving - Vehicles with Automatic Transmission.....	156
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving - Vehicles with Manual Transmission.....	155
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary - Vehicles with Automatic Transmission.....	155
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary - Vehicles with Manual Transmission.....	155
Switching the Ignition On to Accessory Mode.....	154
Vehicles with a Diesel Engine.....	155

R

REACH.....	11
Rear Fog Lamps.....	92
Rear Fog Lamp Indicator.....	92
Switching the Rear Fog Lamps On or Off.....	92
Rear Lamp Removal	
See: Removing a Rear Lamp.....	315
Rear Parking Aid.....	200
Object Distance Indicator.....	201
Rear Parking Aid Information Messages.....	202
Rear Seats.....	147
Folding the Seat Backrest.....	147
Unfolding the Seat Backrest.....	148
Rear Under Floor Storage.....	263
Adjustable Load Floor.....	263

Index

Rear View Camera.....	209
Enhanced Parking Aids or Park Pilot.....	211
Using the Rear View Camera.....	209
Rear View Camera	
See: Rear View Camera.....	209
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	84
Rear Window Washer.....	85
Rear Window Wiper.....	84
Rear Wiper Blades	
See: Changing the Rear Wiper Blades.....	313
Refueling.....	179
Refueling System Overview.....	179
Refueling System Warning.....	181
Refueling Your Vehicle.....	179
Remote Control - Vehicles With: Keyless	
Entry.....	53
Changing the Remote Control Battery.....	54
Locating Your Vehicle.....	55
Passive Key.....	53
Remote Control Information Messages.....	55
Remote Control - Vehicles With: Remote	
Flip Key.....	56
Changing the Remote Control Battery.....	56
Locating Your Vehicle.....	57
Remote Control Information Messages.....	58
Remote Start.....	140
About Remote Start.....	140
Enabling Remote Start.....	140
Remotely Starting the Engine.....	141
Remotely Stopping the Engine.....	141
Remote Start Limitations.....	140
Remote Start Settings.....	141

Removing a Headlamp.....	314
Removing a Rear Lamp.....	315
Brake Lamp, Rear Lamp and Direction	
Indicator.....	315
Reversing Lamp.....	316
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	326
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	12
Collision Repairs.....	12
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical	
Repairs.....	12
Warranty on Replacement Parts.....	12
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote	
Control.....	58
Restarting the Engine.....	173
Restarting the Engine in Gear.....	173
Restarting the Engine in Neutral.....	173
Roadside Emergencies.....	276
Roof Racks and Load Carriers - Vehicles	
With: Panoramic Roof Opening	
Panel.....	264
Towbar Carriers.....	265
Roof Racks and Load Carriers - Vehicles	
Without: Panoramic Roof Opening	
Panel.....	264
Towbar Carriers.....	264
Running-In	
See: Breaking-In.....	273
Running Out of Fuel.....	177
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel	
Container.....	178
Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....	178

S

Safety Precautions.....	176
Seatbelt Reminder.....	44
Fasten Seatbelt Audible Warning.....	44
Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp.....	44
Seatbelt Status.....	44
Seatbelts.....	43
Seats.....	142
Security.....	74
Service Data.....	15
Settings Data.....	16
Comfort and Convenience Data.....	16
Entertainment Data.....	16
Settings.....	431
Ambient Lighting.....	431
Android Auto.....	431
Apple CarPlay.....	431
Audio.....	431
Automatic Updates.....	431
Bluetooth.....	432
Clock.....	432
Display.....	432
Emergency Assistance.....	432
FordPass.....	432
General.....	432
Mobile Apps.....	432
Navigation.....	432
Phone.....	432
Seats.....	432
Sound.....	432
Valet Mode.....	432

Index

Vehicle.....	432	Starter Switch		Starting a Gasoline Engine - Manual	
Voice Control.....	432	See: Ignition Switch.....	153	Transmission.....	160
Wi-Fi.....	432	Starting a Diesel Engine.....	164	Automatic Engine Shutdown.....	161
Shifting Into Reverse - 5-Speed Manual		Engine Warning Lamps.....	165	Engine Warning Lamps.....	163
Transmission.....	189	Failure to Start.....	164	Failure to Start.....	161
Shifting Into Reverse - 6-Speed Manual		Glow Plug Indicator.....	165	Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes.....	163
Transmission.....	189	Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes.....	165	Important Ventilating Information.....	163
Side Airbags.....	48	Important Ventilating Information.....	165	Starting System Information Messages.....	163
Side Curtain Airbags.....	49	Starting System Information Messages.....	166	Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is	
Side Sensing System.....	204	Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is		Moving.....	162
Object Distance Indicator.....	205	Moving.....	164	Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is	
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	142	Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is		Stationary.....	162
Snow Chains		Stationary.....	164	Vehicles with an Ignition Key.....	160
See: Using Snow Chains.....	334	Vehicles with an Ignition Key.....	164	Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition	
Spare Wheel		Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition		Switch.....	161
See: Changing a Road Wheel - Vehicles With:		Switch.....	164	Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	153
Spare Wheel.....	338	Starting a Gasoline Engine - Automatic		General Information.....	153
Speed Control		Transmission.....	157	Steering Wheel.....	19
See: Cruise Control.....	212	Automatic Engine Shutdown.....	158	Stopping the Engine.....	172
Speed Limiter.....	235	Engine Warning Lamps.....	159	Stopping the Engine in Gear.....	172
Principle of Operation.....	235	Failure to Start.....	157	Stopping the Engine in Neutral.....	172
Using Speed Limiter.....	235	Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes.....	159	Storage Compartments.....	152
Speed Sign Recognition.....	252	Important Ventilating Information.....	159	Streaming Bluetooth Audio - Vehicles With:	
Principle of Operation.....	252	Starting System Information Messages.....	160	SYNC 2.5.....	400
Speed Sign Recognition System		Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is		Streaming Bluetooth Audio - Vehicles	
Display.....	253	Moving.....	159	Without: SYNC.....	400
Speed Sign Recognition System		Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is		Selecting a Bluetooth Source.....	400
Messages.....	253	Stationary.....	159	Sunroof	
Using Speed Sign Recognition.....	252	Vehicles with an Ignition Key.....	157	See: Moonroof.....	102
Stability Control.....	199	Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition		Supplementary Restraints System.....	46
Principle of Operation.....	199	Switch.....	157	Principle of Operation.....	46

Index

Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off.....	172
Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and Off.....	261
Switching Off the Engine.....	166
Vehicles With a Turbocharger.....	166
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off.....	47
Switching the Passenger Airbag Off.....	47
Switching the Passenger Airbag On.....	47
Symbols Glossary.....	9
SYNC™ 3.....	408
General Information.....	408
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting.....	433
Additional Information and Assistance.....	444
Apps.....	441
Navigation.....	440
Phone.....	438
Resetting the System.....	444
USB and Bluetooth Audio.....	435
Voice Recognition.....	433
Wi-Fi Connectivity.....	443

T

Technical Specifications	
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	363
Tire Care.....	332
Tire Inflation When Punctured	
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit - Vehicles With: Temporary Mobility Kit.....	328

Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	334
Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	335
Changing Wheels With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	335
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure.....	338
Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System	336
Tire Pressures - 1.0L EcoBoost™, Automatic Transmission.....	349
Temporary Spare Wheel.....	352
Tire Pressures - 1.0L EcoBoost™, Manual Transmission.....	346
Temporary Spare Wheel.....	349
Tire Pressures - 1.1L.....	353
Temporary Spare Wheel.....	356
Tire Pressures - 1.5L Diesel.....	356
Temporary Spare Wheel.....	359
Tire Pressures - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	360
Temporary Spare Wheel.....	362
Tire Repair Kit	
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit - Vehicles With: Temporary Mobility Kit.....	328
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit - Vehicles With: Temporary Mobility Kit.....	328
After Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	332
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	329
Tires	
See: Wheels and Tires.....	328

Tow Ball.....	267
Attaching the Tow Ball Arm.....	268
Detaching the Tow Ball Arm.....	267
Quickly Detaching the Tow Ball Arm.....	269
Tow Ball Arm Guidelines.....	270
Towbar Dimensions.....	364
Towing a Trailer - Excluding: ST.....	266
Towing a Trailer - ST.....	267
Towing Points - Excluding: ST.....	279
Front Towing Point.....	279
Rear Towing Point.....	279
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Automatic Transmission.....	271
Emergency Towing.....	271
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Manual Transmission.....	270
Towing.....	266
Traction Control.....	198
Principle of Operation.....	198
Traffic Sign Recognition.....	250
Principle of Operation.....	250
Traffic Sign Recognition System Display.....	251
Traffic Sign Recognition System Messages.....	252
Using Traffic Sign Recognition.....	250
Trip Computer.....	114
Average Fuel.....	116
Average Speed.....	116
Distance to Empty.....	116
Instantaneous Fuel.....	116
Personalization.....	115
Resetting the Trip Computer.....	114

Index

Trip Odometer.....	116
Trip Timer.....	116
Trip Summary.....	261
How Does Trip Summary Work.....	261
Viewing the Trip Summary.....	261
U	
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™, LHD.....	296
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™, RHD.....	298
Under Hood Overview - 1.1L Duratec, LHD.....	299
Under Hood Overview - 1.1L Duratec, RHD.....	300
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel, LHD.....	301
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel, RHD.....	303
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™, LHD.....	304
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™, RHD.....	306
Unique Driving Characteristics.....	168
USB Port.....	402
Using Adaptive Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	213
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicator.....	220
Adaptive Cruise Control Information Messages.....	221

Adaptive Cruise Control System Sensors.....	218
Adaptive Cruise Control With Speed Sign Recognition.....	221
Adaptive Cruise Control With Speed Sign Recognition Information Messages.....	223
Automatic Cancellation.....	216
Canceling the Set Speed.....	216
Changing the Set Speed.....	216
Detection Issues.....	217
Following a Vehicle.....	214
Hilly Condition Usage.....	216
Overriding the System.....	216
Resuming the Set Speed.....	216
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed.....	214
Setting the Gap Distance.....	215
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off.....	217
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On.....	213
Switching Between the Cruise Control Modes.....	221
Switching to Normal Cruise Control.....	219
System Not Available.....	217
Using Adaptive Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	224
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicator.....	231
Adaptive Cruise Control Information Messages.....	232
Adaptive Cruise Control System Sensors.....	229
Adaptive Cruise Control With Speed Sign Recognition.....	232

Adaptive Cruise Control With Speed Sign Recognition Information Messages.....	234
Automatic Cancellation.....	228
Canceling the Set Speed.....	227
Changing the Set Speed.....	227
Detection Issues.....	228
Following a Vehicle.....	225
Following a Vehicle to a Complete Stop.....	226
Hilly Condition Usage.....	228
Overriding the System.....	227
Resuming the Set Speed.....	228
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed.....	225
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....	225
Setting the Gap Distance.....	226
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off.....	228
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On.....	224
Switching Between the Cruise Control Modes.....	232
Switching to Normal Cruise Control.....	231
System Not Available.....	229
Using Cruise Control.....	212
Canceling the Set Speed.....	212
Changing the Set Speed.....	212
Cruise Control Indicator.....	213
Resuming the Set Speed.....	212
Setting the Cruise Speed.....	212
Switching Cruise Control Off.....	212
Switching Cruise Control On.....	212
Using Snow Chains.....	334

Index

Using Stability Control - Excluding:	
ST.....	199
Using Traction Control.....	198
Switching the System On and Off.....	198
Using Voice Recognition.....	405
Apps.....	416
Automatic Blower Motor Speed	
Reduction.....	418
Entertainment.....	411
General.....	410
Navigation.....	415
Phone.....	413
Phone Voice Service.....	405
Voice Settings.....	417
Using Winter Tires.....	333

V	
Vehicle Care.....	323
Vehicle Dimensions - Excluding: Active/	
Van.....	363
Vehicle Identification Number.....	367
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	366
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	391
Ventilation	
See: Climate Control.....	134
Venting the Moonroof.....	102
Vents	
See: Air Vents.....	134
VIN	
See: Vehicle Identification Number.....	367
Visual Search.....	19

W	
Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	108
Airbag Warning Lamp.....	108
Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp.....	108
Automatic Headlamp High Beam	
Indicator.....	108
Auto-Start-Stop Indicator.....	108
Blind Spot Information System	
Indicator.....	108
Brake System Warning Lamp.....	109
Collision Warning System Indicator.....	109
Cruise Control Indicator.....	109
Direction Indicator.....	109
Door Ajar Warning Lamp.....	109
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning	
Lamp.....	109
Engine Warning Lamps.....	109
Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp.....	110
Front Fog Lamp Indicator.....	110
Frost Warning Lamp.....	110
Glow Plug Indicator.....	110
Hazard Flasher Indicator.....	110
Headlamp High Beam Indicator.....	110
Headlamp Low Beam Warning Lamp.....	110
Ignition Warning Lamp.....	110
Lamps on Indicator.....	110
Lane Keeping Aid Warning Lamp.....	110
Lane Keeping Alert Indicator.....	110
Launch Control Indicator.....	110
Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp.....	111
Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp.....	111

Oil Pressure Warning Lamp.....	111
Over Speed Warning Indicator.....	111
Performance Shift Indicator.....	111
Rear Fog Lamp Indicator.....	111
Shift Indicator.....	111
Stability Control and Traction Control	
Indicator.....	111
Stability Control and Traction Control Off	
Warning Lamp.....	111
Warning Triangle.....	276
Washer Fluid Check.....	313
Washers	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	323
See: Wipers and Washers.....	80
What Is a Connected Vehicle.....	387
What Is Auto-Start-Stop.....	172
What Is Current Highway	
Information.....	262
What Is Efficient Drive Mode.....	261
Wheel Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel - Vehicles With:	
Spare Wheel.....	338
Wheels and Tires.....	328
General Information.....	328
Window Bounce-Back.....	98
Overriding Window Bounce-Back.....	98
Resetting Window Bounce-Back.....	98
What Is Window Bounce-Back.....	98
Windows.....	97
Global Opening and Closing.....	97
Window Bounce-Back.....	98

Index

Windshield Washers.....83
 Settings.....83
Windshield Wipers.....80
 Intermittent Wipe.....80
Winter Tires
 See: Using Winter Tires.....333
Wiper Blades
 See: Checking the Wiper Blades.....313
Wipers and Washers.....80
Wireless Accessory Charger
 Indicators.....151
Wireless Accessory Charger.....150

